

**Climate variability and extremes in the Okavango River Basin,
southern Africa**

By

Oliver Moses

Supervisors:

Prof. Chris J.C. Reason

Dr. Ross C. Blamey

Thesis presented for the degree of **Doctor of Philosophy** in the Department of
Oceanography, Faculty of Science,
University of Cape Town

June 2023

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

Funding

I sincerely thank the University of Botswana for funding my PhD.

Plagiarism declaration

I know the meaning of plagiarism and declare that all the work in the thesis, save for that which is properly acknowledged, is my own. This thesis contains less than 80,000 words including appendices, bibliography, footnotes, tables and equations, and has less than 150 Figures.

I confirm that I have been granted permission by the University of Cape Town's Doctoral Degrees Board to include the following publication(s) in my PhD thesis, and where co-authorships are involved, my co-authors have agreed that I may include the publication(s):

Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Relationships between NDVI, river discharge and climate in the Okavango River Basin region. *International Journal of Climatology* 42(2), 691-713.

Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Extreme rainfall events over the Okavango River basin, southern Africa. *Accepted, Weather and Climate Extremes*.

Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Drought metrics and temperature extremes over the Okavango River basin, southern Africa, and links with the Botswana High. *Under Review, International Journal of Climatology*.

Signature:

Date: 2 June 2023

Student Name: Oliver Moses

Student Number: MSSOLI001

Abstract

The Okavango River Basin (ORB) located in southern Africa is a region of highly sensitive and biodiverse ecosystems. It spans Angola, Namibia and Botswana, with the world-famous Okavango Delta located in the latter country. The ecosystems depend on the highly seasonal ORB streamflow, which is also the major source of freshwater for the rural population, most of whom depend on subsistence farming. Climate variability and extremes such as droughts, hot days and extreme rainfall events are not well understood over this region. Also, the relationship between climate and other aspects like vegetation and river discharge are not well understood. To contribute to a better understanding of this relationship, the thesis investigated relationships between rainfall, temperature, Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) and river discharge, and their interannual variability and trends.

It was found that at monthly and seasonal time scales, NDVI spatial patterns are closely related to those of rainfall than temperature. The NDVI-rainfall and NDVI-temperature relationships differ north of 18.9°S where rainfall is higher than to its south. Correlations between NDVI and rainfall show lags of 1-2-months. Large areas across the region show significant warming trends in all seasons but mainly in October-December (OND), as well as wetting mainly in the north. The warming trend may imply more evaporation and desiccation which may exacerbate extreme event impacts such as severe droughts. Interannual variability of rainfall, NDVI and temperature is pronounced with significant correlations with El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO), the subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD) and the Botswana High for rainfall and temperature, and for NDVI with ENSO. The temperature (rainfall) correlations with ENSO and the Botswana were positive (negative), with the SIOD they were negative (positive), and the NDVI-ENSO correlations were negative. On longer time scales, the wet 2006-2013 period was analysed relative to much drier 1999-2005 epoch for OND. The 2006-2013 wetter conditions appear linked to La Niña Modoki conditions, regional circulation differences and warmer sea surface temperature near Angola.

Extreme rainfall events over the ORB were analysed. The analysis was performed within a larger region in western central southern Africa (WCSA), given that many rainfall events extend beyond river basin boundaries. Focus was placed on extreme rainfall events accumulated over 1-day (DP1) and 3-days (DP3), during the main rainy season, January-

34 April (JFMA). Due to data sparsity, the Climate Hazards Group Infrared Precipitation with
35 Station data (CHIRPS) were used to identify these events.

36

37 It was found that contributions of DP1 and DP3 events to JFMA rainfall totals are, on
38 average, ~10% and ~17%, respectively, but in some years their contributions exceed 30%.
39 Most of the events result from tropical-extratropical cloud bands, with tropical lows being
40 also important. Interannual variability in extreme events is substantial and appears linked to
41 ENSO and the Botswana High. Although ENSO influences the extreme events and rainfall
42 totals more generally over southern Africa, by far the neutral JFMA 2017 season experienced
43 the wettest conditions over the world-famous Okavango Delta region. Factors that
44 contributed to these heavy rains included a deeper Angola Low, weaker mid-level Botswana
45 High and anomalous westerly moisture fluxes from the tropical southeast Atlantic during
46 January – early March. The second most intense rainfall event occurred on April 22nd,
47 resulting from a cut-off low. DP1 frequencies show significant increasing trends, and
48 similarly, rain-days and rain totals over many areas. These trends have important implications
49 for agricultural and water management as well as wildlife conservation in the ORB.

50

51 To contribute to a better understanding of drought over the ORB region, the thesis analysed
52 various drought metrics. These include a Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) index, based
53 on the product of maximum dry spell duration and maximum temperature anomaly, and the
54 Standardised Precipitation-Evapotranspiration Index (SPEI). Strong horizontal gradients in
55 frequencies of dry spells and hot days were found to shift south over the ORB from August to
56 November as the tropical rain-belt shifts increasingly south of the equator, the Congo Air
57 Boundary declines and the Botswana High strengthens and shifts southwestwards. By
58 December, the tropical gradient in dry spell frequencies is unnoticeable while that across the
59 Limpopo River and southern ORB region, where the Botswana High is centred, stands out.
60 On seasonal time scales, October-November 2013-2021 is particularly hot and dry over the
61 Okavango Delta region. The thesis provided evidence that this hot and dry epoch is related to
62 a stronger and southward shifted Botswana High and reduced low-level moisture
63 convergence. On interannual time scales, there were strong relationships with the Botswana
64 High, and to lesser extent ENSO. A strong drying-warming trend was found in the early
65 summer, linked to a significant strengthening of the Botswana High. These trends, in
66 conjunction with the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase 6 (CMIP6) projected
67 early summer drying over southern Africa found in the literature, may impact severely on the

68 sensitive ecosystems of the ORB, and on water availability as well as subsistence farming in
69 the region.
70

Acknowledgements

71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103

Many thanks to the University of Botswana for funding my PhD. To my supervisors, Prof. Chris J.C. Reason and Dr. Ross C. Blamey, many thanks for your support, hard work and tireless guidance throughout my PhD. To the staff and fellow students of the Oceanography Department, thank you all for your support. In particular, Dr. Raymond Roman, thanks so much for your IT support. To my friend Lynnette, many thanks to you and your family for making my stay in Cape Town an enjoyable one by assisting me in various ways, like storing my luggage at your place when I had visited my family in Botswana, and at times, you took me to the airport. To my Botswana friends, Ian and Shadrack, and many others, thank you for your support. To my family, I cannot thank you enough, but thank you for taking care of family projects while I was busy studying, which otherwise would have collapsed.

Last but not least, I would like to thank the various organisations that provided datasets used in the analysis. The datasets are provided in the following websites:

- CHIRPS <https://www.chc.ucsb.edu/data/chirps>
- PERSIANN-CDR <https://chrsdata.eng.uci.edu>
- NCEP circulation fields and OLR <https://www.psl.noaa.gov/data/gridded>
- NDVI <https://ecocast.arc.nasa.gov/data/pub/gimms/3g.v1>
- 2m air temperature <https://psl.noaa.gov/data/gridded/data.ghcncams.html>
- Niño 3.4 index <https://origin.cpc.ncep.noaa.gov>
- Topographical data <https://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/mgg/global>
- River discharge www.okavangodata.ub.bw/ori
- SASSCAL <http://data.sasscal.org>
- GridSat <https://www.ncei.noaa.gov/data/geostationary-ir-channel-brightness-temperature-gridsat-b1/access>
- IBTrACS <https://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/ibtracs>
- TRMM <https://disc.gsfc.nasa.gov/datasets>
- ERA5 data <https://cds.climate.copernicus.eu>
- SPEI <http://spei.csic.es/index.html>
- NOAA Optimally Interpolated SST <https://psl.noaa.gov/data/gridded/data.noaa.oisst.v2.highres.html>

104 The Botswana and Namibia Meteorological Services provided station data, the South African
105 Weather Service provided synoptic weather maps, and the Botswana Disaster Management
106 Office provided flood impact data.

107

List of Tables

108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140

Table 4.1 Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of NDVI with rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region (upper panel) (1982-2015). Lower panel is as in the upper panel but for seasonal lag (0-1) correlations. Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown47

Table 4.2 Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of ENSO with NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown49

Table 4.3 Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of SIOD with NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown50

Table 4.4 Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of Angola Low (AL) with NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown51

Table 4.5 Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of Botswana High (BH) with NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown52

Table 4.6 JFMA zero lag detrended correlations of ENSO, SIOD, Angola Low (AL) and Botswana High (BH) versus NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015) (left panel). Right panel is as in the left panel but for DJFM zero lags of the same variables. Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown53

Table 5.1 Correlations of DP1 and DP3 characteristics (frequencies and Intensity-Max) with rainfall totals (for the WCSA, north catchment and Ngamiland), ENSO and the Botswana High over the period JFMA 1981-2021. Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown89

141
142
143
144
145
146

Table 6.1 Correlations of SPEI and the Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric, averaged over the north catchment and Ngamiland, with ENSO, Botswana High (BH) and Angola Low (AL), for ON, DJF and MA (1981-2021). Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown
.....125

List of Figures

147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179

Figure 1.1 (a) The ORB region (11° - 28° S, 13° - 31.5° E), its surface elevation and the selected rainfall stations numbered 1 to 19 (full names shown on the right of the figure). (b) The spatial extent of the Okavango River catchment (blue polygon) and the location of the Okavango Delta and the two main rivers, the Cubango and Cuito (denoted by “A” and “B”, respectively). The circle just to the north of the Delta denotes Mohembo hydrological station. “L18” is the 18.9° S latitude dividing the study area into high and low rainfall zones. Cor_Box (11.7° - 18.9° S, 14.8° - 23° E) is the area mainly upstream of Mohembo which includes the northern Okavango catchment. This figure is discussed further in Chapter 42

Figure 1.2 Locations of the Angolan Highlands and Ngamiland district in northwestern Botswana3

Figure 2.1 A schematic [adapted from Driver and Reason (2017)] showing common synoptic features that influence the weather and climate of southern Africa during summer. These features are labelled and are discussed in the text. They include the Botswana High (BH), Angola Low (AL), tropical-extratropical cloud bands (CB), the ITCZ over the western Indian Ocean, Congo Air Boundary (CAB), South Atlantic High (St. Helena High), South Indian High (Mascarene High), Mozambique Channel Trough (MCT), Agulhas Current, tropical low-level easterlies and easterly waves10

Figure 4.1 The spatial distribution of the main vegetation classes in southern Africa (source: UNESCO/AETFAT/UNSO and White, 1984). The black square depicts the study area, while the dotted line is the location of the L18 described in the text. The *Azonal vegetation* class consists mostly of herbaceous swamp and aquatic vegetation in the Delta, as well as halophytic vegetation which occurs in the salt pans to the west (northern Namibia) and southeast of the Delta36

Figure 4.2 (a) and (b) show CHIRPS mean rainfall versus station data (denoted by circles and squares, with station data plotted in them) for OND and JFMA, respectively, over the ORB region (1983-2012). The location of the two stations used for the comparison in Figure 4.3 are denoted by a square symbol (“R” and “M” in the square symbol denote Rundu and

180 Maun stations, respectively). (c) and (d) are as in (a) and (b) but for PERSIANN-CDR (P-
 181 CDR). The blue polygon is the outline of the Okavango River catchment. “L18” is the 18.9°S
 182 latitude dividing the study area into high and low rainfall zones40

183
 184 **Figure 4.3** (a) monthly mean rainfall in CHIRPS, PERSIANN-CDR and Maun station
 185 (station 6 in Figure 1.1) data for the period 1983-2012. (b) as in (a) but for the Rundu station
 186 (station 2 in Figure 1.1). (c) CHIRPS versus observed and PERSIANN-CDR monthly rainfall
 187 for Maun. (d) is as in (c) but for Rundu, with “TL” denoting trend line. None of the trends
 188 were statistically significant at $\alpha = 0.05$. (e) Monthly mean NDVI, temperature and rainfall
 189 spatially averaged over the ORB region (11°-28°S, 13°-31.5°E), and of river discharge at
 190 Mohembo (1982-2015)43

191
 192 **Figure 4.4** Long-term mean (1982-2015) NDVI, temperature and rainfall over the ORB
 193 region. (a)-(c) show NDVI over OND, JFMA and MJJAS, respectively. (d)-(f) are as in (a)-
 194 (c) but for rainfall. (g)-(i) are as in (a)-(c) but for temperature. The blue polygon is the outline
 195 of the Okavango River catchment. “L18” is the 18.9°S latitude dividing the study area into
 196 high and low rainfall zones45

197
 198 **Figure 4.5** Scatter plots and best-fit linear regression lines showing the relationships between
 199 temperature (TE) and NDVI north of L18 [(a) and (b), left column] and between rainfall (RN)
 200 or temperature and NDVI south of L18 [(c)-(g)], for the period 1982-2015. All slopes are
 201 significant at $\alpha = 0.05$. x and y axis limits in TE-NDVI panels are the same. Also, x and y
 202 axis limits in RN-NDVI panels are the same54

203
 204 **Figure 4.6** (a) Time series of OND rainfall and standardised NDVI anomalies north of L18
 205 (11°-18.9°S, 13°-31.5°E) (1982-2015). (b) is as in (a) but for JFMA. (c) Time series of OND
 206 rainfall and standardised NDVI anomalies south of L18 (18.9°-28°S, 13°-31.5°E). (d) is as in
 207 (c) but for JFMA. El Niño, La Niña, -SIOD and +SIOD events are labelled in (b) and (d).
 208 Dashed lines are trend slopes. Significant slopes at $\alpha = 0.05$ in: (a) 12.43 mm/decade
 209 (rainfall), -0.15/decade (NDVI); (c) 0.18/decade (NDVI); (d) 0.37/decade (NDVI)56

210
 211 **Figure 4.7** (a)-(d) Spatial distribution of trends (represented as per decade) for NDVI in
 212 OND, JFMA, DJFM and MJJAS, respectively, over the ORB region (1982-2015). (e)-(h) is

213 as in (a)-(d) but for rainfall (RN). (i)-(j) is as in (a)-(d) but for temperature (TE). Areas with
 214 significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$ are denoted with stippling. The blue polygon is the outline of
 215 the ORB. “L18” is the 18.9°S latitude dividing the study area into high and low rainfall zones
 21658

217
 218 **Figure 4.8** JFMA 1988 circulation anomalies with respect to 1981-2010 climatology. (a), (b),
 219 (c), (d) show anomalies of rainfall, 700 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC) (shading) and
 220 moisture flux (MF) (vectors), precipitable water and interpolated OLR, respectively, over the
 221 region 45°S-0°N, 0°-70°E. (e) shows anomalies of SST (45°S-0°N, 0°-120°E). Areas with
 222 statistically significant anomalies based on bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with
 223 stippling61

224
 225 **Figure 4.9** OND composites of wet (2006-2013) minus dry (1999-2005) period. (a), (b), (c),
 226 (d) and (e) show composite anomalies of rainfall, 700 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC)
 227 (shading) and moisture flux (MF) (vectors), precipitable water, 700 hPa vertical velocity and
 228 interpolated OLR, respectively, over the region 45°S-0°N, 0°-70°E. (f) shows composite
 229 anomalies of SST (50°S-30°N, 180°W-180°E). Areas with statistically significant anomalies
 230 based on bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling64

231
 232 **Figure 5.1** (a) The study area, i.e., the WCSA (11°-25°S, 14.5°-28.5°E) and its elevation
 233 (highest elevation of 1600-1800 m above sea level is in central Angola). Location of the
 234 study area in southern Africa is shown in the insert of this panel. The Okavango Delta, the
 235 two main rivers (Cubango and Cuito), and country names are indicated and labelled on the
 236 right of the figure. (b) JFMA mean rainfall (1981-2021). (c) Location of the north catchment
 237 (NC) and Ngamiland within the ORB (blue polygon in all 3 panels). Villages in Ngamiland
 238 that reported floods during JFMA 2017 include those denoted by “1”, “2” and “3”, labelled
 239 on the right of the figure70

240
 241 **Figure 5.2** Spatial distribution of the 9 out of the top 20 DP1 events that had their large
 242 rainfall values covering the north catchment and/or Ngamiland during JFMA 1981-2021. The
 243 events are arranged in descending order of magnitude (defined in Equation 5.2) from (a) to
 244 (i). Dates of the events are shown at the top of the panels. The blue polygon is as in Figure
 245 5.179

246

247	Figure 5.3 As in Figure 5.2, but for DP3 events	80
248		
249	Figure 5.4 (a)-(d) Proportion (prop; denoted by bars) of grid-points (g-points) over the	
250	WCSA with positive standardised rainfall anomalies and the average (av) values of these	
251	rainfall anomalies, for the top 200 DP1 events during JFMA 1981-2021. The top ranked	
252	event is plotted in the upper panel on the left through to rank 200 on the bottom right of the	
253	lowest panel. Blue, red and green squares on each bar are used to indicate whether the heavy	
254	rain of these events fell over the north catchment (NC), Ngamiland (Ngami) or over both	
255	areas, respectively, whereas the bars with no squares on are used for the events whose heavy	
256	rain did not fall on either of these 2 areas. Dates in magenta colour are for the events that	
257	occurred during JFMA 2017	82
258		
259	Figure 5.5 As in Figure 5.4 but for DP3 events	83
260		
261	Figure 5.6 (a) and (b) Mean daily rainfall and its spatial trends, respectively, in JFMA (1981-	
262	2021), over tropical southern Africa. (c) and (e) Mean number of rain-days receiving >1 mm	
263	and >10 mm, respectively. (d) and (f) Spatial trends for (c) and (e), respectively. Stippling in	
264	(b), (d) and (f) denotes areas with significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in	
265	Figure 5.1	84
266		
267	Figure 5.7 (a) Frequencies of the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events over the WCSA, for JFMA	
268	1981-2021. (b) Percentage contribution of the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events to JFMA rainfall	
269	totals over the WCSA. (c) As in (a) but for Intensity-Max (as described in the text). Dashed	
270	lines are the means of the shown variables. Notation below the x axis in (c): E, El Niño; L, La	
271	Niña	87
272		
273	Figure 5.8 (a) Standardised rainfall anomalies over the WCSA for JFMA 1981-2021. (b) As	
274	in (a) but for Ngamiland. (c) As in (a) but for the north catchment. Notation below the x axis	
275	in (c) is as in Figure 5.7c	88
276		
277	Figure 5.9 (a) Daily rainfall totals for JFMA 2017 averaged over Ngamiland. The red dashed	
278	line is the mean (1981-2021) daily rainfall averaged over JFMA, for Ngamiland. (b)	
279	Standardised daily rainfall anomalies for the series in (a), computed by subtracting long-term	

280 mean rainfall (1981-2021) of JFMA days from the corresponding JFMA 2017 daily rainfall
281 totals. (c) and (d) are as in (a) and (b), respectively, but for the north catchment93

282

283 **Figure 5.10** Circulation anomalies for 1 January - 8 March 2017 with respect to 1981-2021
284 climatology, over southern Africa. (a), (b), (c) and (d) show anomalies of rainfall, OLR, 850
285 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC; shading) and moisture flux (MF; vectors), and 850 hPa
286 geopotential height, respectively. Areas with statistically significant anomalies based on
287 bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling95

288

289 **Figure 5.11** As in Figure 5.10 but for (a) 500 hPa geopotential height, (b) 500 hPa omega and
290 (c) SST96

291

292 **Figure 5.12** Circulation anomalies for 21-23 April 2017, with respect to 1981-2021
293 climatology, over southern Africa. The fields and stippling are as described in Figures 5.10
294 and 5.11, with the variables in (c) and (d) measured at 850 hPa and 500 hPa, respectively.
29598

296

297 **Figure 6.1** (a) The study area, i.e., southern Africa (5° - 40° S, 5° - 55° E), with its surface
298 elevation shown. It's location in Africa is shown in the insert of the panel. The blue polygon
299 is the extent of the Okavango River Basin (ORB). Country names denoted by letters are spelt
300 out on the right of the panel. (b) Subdivision of the ORB into the north catchment (red dashed
301 polygon) and Ngamiland (orange dashed polygon). The two main rivers, i.e., Cubango and
302 Cuito, denoted by "A" and "B", respectively, which originate from the southern Angolan
303 Highlands and merge in southeastern Angola to form the Okavango River, and Mohembo
304 hydrological station (orange circle) at the apex of the Okavango Delta are shown107

305

306 **Figure 6.2** (a)-(g) Monthly mean of dry spell frequencies for October to April, respectively,
307 over southern Africa for the period 1981-2021. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1113

308

309 **Figure 6.3** (a)-(e) Monthly mean of 2 m specific humidity (spec hum; shading) overlaid with
310 10 m winds (vectors), for August to December over southern Africa for the period 1981-
311 2021. The humidity gradient and wind convergence in these plots are used to identify the
312 Congo Air Boundary described in the text. The approximate position of this boundary is
313 marked with red stars in (c) as an example. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1114

314

315 **Figure 6.4** Monthly climatology of the African tropical rain-belt averaged over longitudes
316 16°-23°E, for the period 1981-2021115
317

318 **Figure 6.5** (a)-(g) Monthly mean of 500 hPa geopotential height (GPH; shaded) for October
319 to April over southern Africa, showing the mean position of the Botswana High (BH)
320 (position determined as described in the text) for the period 1981-2021. The blue polygon is
321 as in Figure 6.1117
322

323 **Figure 6.6** (a)-(c) show 90th percentiles of maximum temperatures (Tmax) for ON, DJF and
324 MA, respectively, over southern Africa for the period 1981-2021. (d)-(f) show dry spell
325 frequencies for ON, DJF and MA, respectively. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1119
326

327 **Figure 6.7** First column: (a) Evolution of SPEI-2 values for ON (ON SPEI) averaged over
328 latitudes 11°-17°S; (b)-(d) Dry spell frequencies, hot day frequencies and 500 hPa
329 geopotential height (GPH) anomalies (anoms), respectively, for ON, averaged over the same
330 latitudes as in (a). Second column: (d)-(h) are as in (a)-(d), respectively, but averaged over
331 latitudes 18°-21°S. Latitudes in the first and second columns correspond with the north
332 catchment and Ngamiland, respectively, i.e., red (orange) dashed polygon marked X (Y) to
333 the right of panel (e)121
334

335 **Figure 6.8** First column: (a) Evolution of SPEI-3 values for DJF (DJF SPEI) averaged over
336 latitudes 11°-17°S; (b)-(d) Dry spell frequencies, hot day frequencies and 500 hPa
337 geopotential height (GPH) anomalies (anoms), respectively, for DJF, averaged over the same
338 latitudes as in (a). Second column: (d)-(h) are as in (a)-(d), respectively, but averaged over
339 latitudes 18°-21°S. Latitudes in the first and second columns correspond with the north
340 catchment and Ngamiland, respectively, i.e., red (orange) dashed polygon marked X (Y) to
341 the right of panel (e). The year 1981 means December 1981 to February 1982, and so on
342123
343

344 **Figure 6.9** (a) SPEI-2 values for ON for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
345 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for ON124
346

347 **Figure 6.10** SPEI-3 values for DJF for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
348 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for DJF. The year
349 1981 means December 1981 to February 1982, and so on126
350

351 **Figure 6.11** SPEI-2 values for MA for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
352 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for MA. Notation
353 below the x axis in (b): E, El Niño; L, La Niña127
354

355 **Figure 6.12** (a) Standardised rainfall anomalies (anoms) averaged over the north catchment
356 and Ngamiland, for ON 1981-2021. (b) Anomalies of 500 hPa geopotential height for ON
357 2013-2021 with respect to 1981-2021 climatology, over southern Africa. (c) As in (b) but for
358 omega. (d) As in (b) but for 850 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC; shading) and moisture
359 flux (MF; vectors). (e) As in (b) but for 850 hPa geopotential height. The blue polygon in (b)-
360 (d) is as in Figure 6.1, and areas with statistically significant anomalies based on bootstrap
361 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling129
362

363 **Figure 6.13** Monthly average of the African tropical rain-belt for the period 2013-2021
364 minus the climatology (1981-2021) shown in Figure 6.4130
365

366 **Figure 6.14** (a) Trends in 90th percentiles (perc) of maximum temperatures (temp) for ON,
367 for the period 1981-2021 over southern Africa. (b) Trends in dry spell frequencies for ON.
368 Stippling denotes areas with significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in Figure
369 6.1134
370

371 **Figure 6.15** (a) Spatial trends in ON 500 hPa geopotential height for the period 1981-2021
372 showing trend in the Botswana High (BH). Stippling denotes areas with significant trends at
373 $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1. (b) ON time series of Botswana High index
374 (defined in the text) for the period 1981-2021. Trend slope (trend line unshown) = 0.06
375 m/year, significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ 135
376

Table of Contents

377		
378		
379	Abstract	v
380	Acknowledgements	viii
381	List of Tables	x
382	List of Figures	xii
383		
384	Chapter 1: Introduction	1
385		
386	Chapter 2: Literature Review	8
387	2.1 Regional atmospheric circulation and weather systems of importance	8
388	2.2 Adjacent Oceans and interannual variability of southern Africa rainfall	15
389	2.3 ENSO, Southern Annular Mode and interannual variability of southern Africa rainfall	
390	17
391	2.4 General climate trends over southern Africa	19
392	2.5 Climate, vegetation and river discharge over the ORB region	22
393	2.6 Summary	26
394		
395	Chapter 3: Data and Methods	28
396	3.1 The CDI metric	28
397	3.2 Datasets	29
398	3.2.1 CHIRPS	29
399	3.2.2 ERA5 reanalyses	30
400	3.2.3 NDVI	31
401		
402	Chapter 4: Relationships between NDVI, river discharge and climate in the Okavango River	
403	Basin region	33
404	4.1 Introduction	35
405	4.2 Data and Methods	38
406	4.3 Results and Discussion	42
407	4.3.1 Seasonality	42
408	4.3.2 Lag correlations	45
409	4.3.3 Trends	53

410	4.3.4 Interannual variability	58
411	4.3.5 The 2006-2013 wet epoch	62
412	4.4 Conclusions	65
413		
414	Chapter 5: Extreme rainfall events over the Okavango River basin, southern Africa	67
415	5.1 Introduction	69
416	5.2 Data and Methods	73
417	5.2.1 Datasets	73
418	5.2.2 Methods	74
419	5.3 Results	77
420	5.3.1 Extreme events spatial distribution and weather types	77
421	5.3.2 Extreme events interannual variability and trends	86
422	5.4 JFMA 2017 floods over Ngamiland	91
423	5.4.1 January-early March 2017 wet period	94
424	5.4.2 Synoptic wet spell 21-23 April 2017	97
425	5.5 Discussion and conclusions	99
426		
427	Chapter 6: Analysis of drought metrics and temperature extremes over the Okavango River	
428	basin, southern Africa, and links with the Botswana High	103
429	6.1 Introduction	105
430	6.2 Data and Methods	108
431	6.3 Results	111
432	6.3.1 Annual cycle	111
433	6.3.2 Seasonal climatological patterns	118
434	6.3.3 Interannual variability	119
435	6.3.4 Circulation anomaly patterns associated with the 2013-2021 epoch during ON	127
436	6.4 Discussion and conclusions	131
437		
438	Chapter 7: Summary and conclusions	136
439		
440	References	145
441		

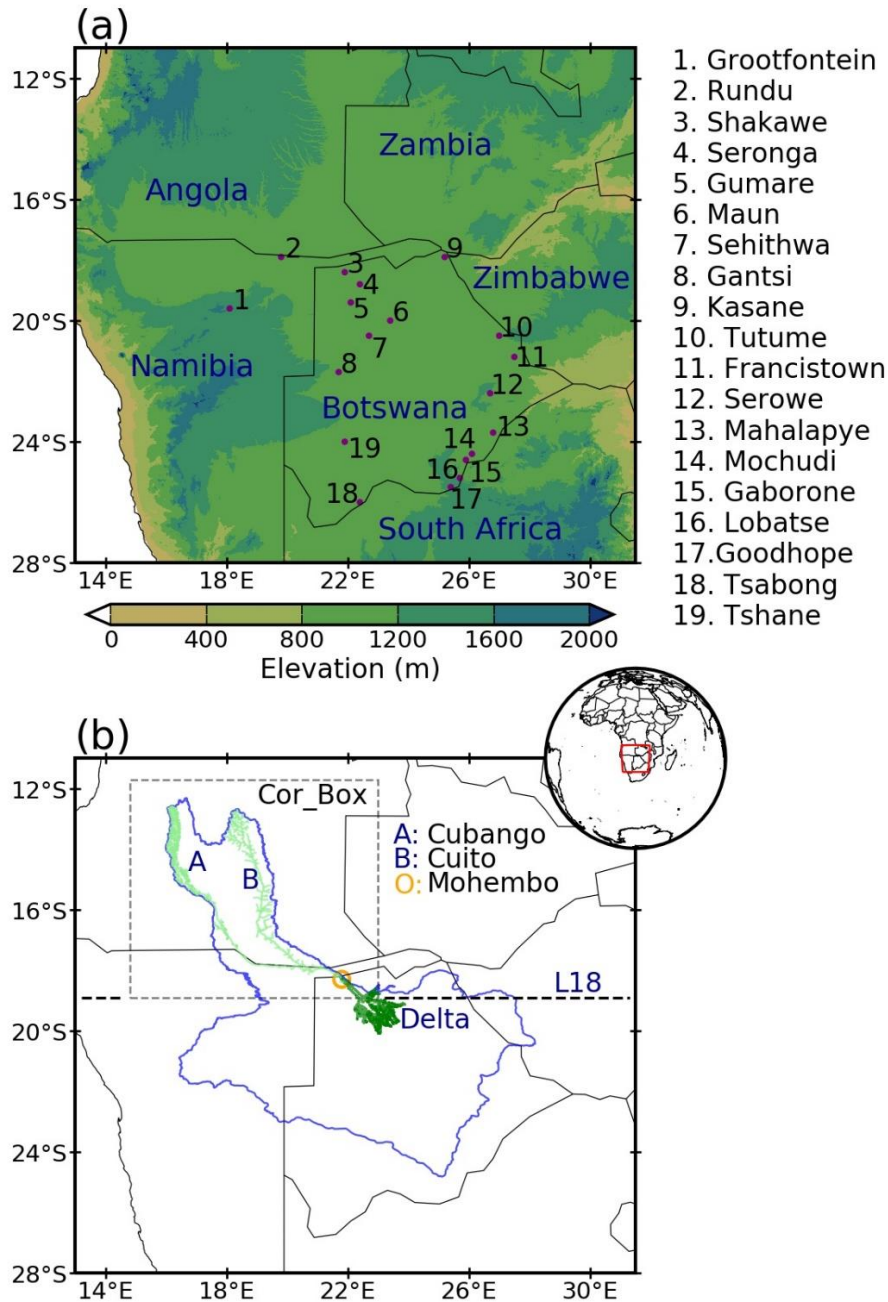
442 **Chapter 1: Introduction**

443

444 The Okavango River Basin (ORB) (blue polygon in **Figure 1.1b**), stretching from Angola
445 through Namibia to Botswana, contains unique rivers in the sense that it does not flow into
446 the ocean, but it terminates in the latter country. The basin water is lost in various ways such
447 as through evapotranspiration and infiltration to be part of underground water (McCarthy and
448 Metcalfe, 1990; Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). The terminal section of the ORB contains the
449 world-famous Okavango Delta, which is a United Nations Educational, Scientific and
450 Cultural Organization (UNESCO) site, and it is also a Ramsar site, well-known for its highly
451 biodiverse and sensitive ecosystems (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006; UNESCO, 2014). These
452 ecosystems crucially depend on the highly seasonal streamflow originating mainly in the
453 Angolan Highlands (high rainfall zone) shown in **Figure 1.2**, which receives higher rainfall
454 than the Okavango Delta region located in Ngamiland district (**Figure 1.2**) in northwestern
455 Botswana (low rainfall zone) (McCarthy et al., 2003; Andersson et al., 2003, 2006; Kgathi et
456 al., 2006; Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). The ORB streamflow is also a critically important
457 source of freshwater for the rural population, most of whom rely on subsistence farming as it
458 is the case over southern Africa generally. Previous studies indicated that future development
459 initiatives in the ORB riparian states (Andersson et al., 2006; Kgathi et al., 2006; Hughes et
460 al., 2011), as well as population growth (Weinzierl and Schilling, 2013), are likely to increase
461 water extraction from the ORB, hence there is need to better understand the climate of this
462 basin.

463

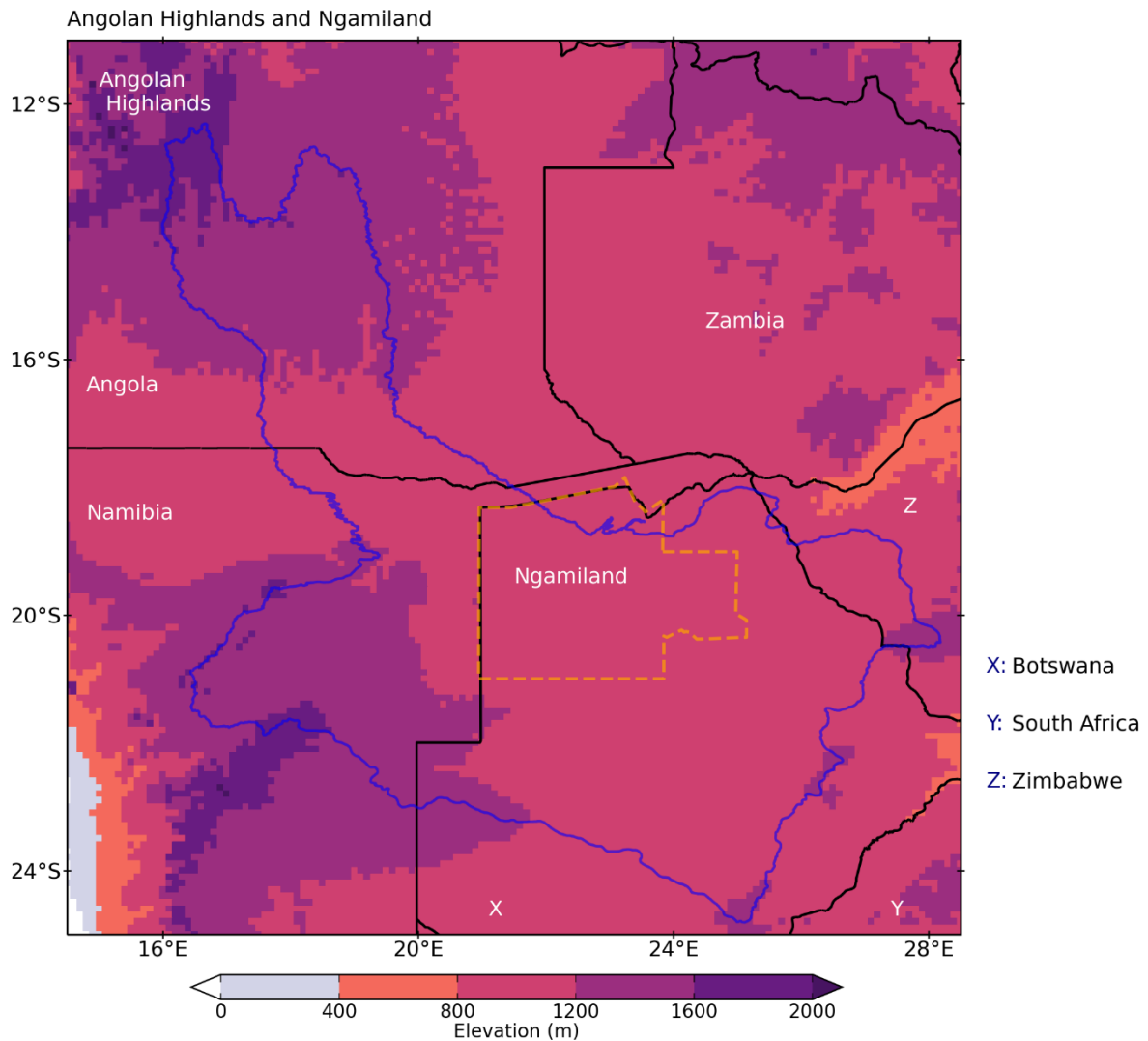
464 Most of southern Africa (except the far southwest and the south coast of South Africa)
465 experiences rainfall from October to March or April. Rainfall totals range from ~1000
466 mm/year in the Angolan Highlands to ~450 mm/year in the Okavango Delta located in
467 Ngamiland district (see **Figures 1.1b** and **1.2** for locations). Generally, temperatures are high
468 particularly over Botswana where daily maximums can exceed 42°C (Moses and Gondwe,
469 2019).



470

471 **Figure 1.1** (a) The ORB region (11°-28°S, 13°-31.5°E), its surface elevation and the selected
 472 rainfall stations numbered 1 to 19 (full names shown on the right of the figure). (b) The
 473 spatial extent of the Okavango River catchment (blue polygon) and the location of the
 474 Okavango Delta and the two main rivers, the Cubango and Cuito (denoted by "A" and "B",
 475 respectively). The circle just to the north of the Delta denotes Mohembo hydrological station.
 476 "L18" is the 18.9°S latitude dividing the study area into high and low rainfall zones. Cor_Box
 477 (11.7°-18.9°S, 14.8°-23°E) is the area mainly upstream of Mohembo which includes the
 478 northern Okavango catchment. This figure is discussed further in Chapter 4.

479



480

481 **Figure 1.2** Locations of the Angolan Highlands and Ngamiland district in northwestern
482 Botswana.

483

484 Rainfall is caused mainly by tropical-extratropical cloud bands, also known locally as
485 tropical-temperate troughs (Harrison, 1984; Hart et al., 2010, 2013, 2018; Macron et al.,
486 2014), which are triggered by the Angola Low by providing the moisture at early stage of
487 their development (Munday and Washington, 2017; Crétat et al., 2018). Other important
488 systems contributing to rainfall include mesoscale convective systems (MCSs; Blamey and
489 Reason, 2012, 2013; Morake et al., 2021) and tropical lows (Munday and Washington, 2017;
490 Howard et al., 2019; Howard and Washington, 2020; Rapolaki et al., 2019, 2020). However,
491 contribution of these systems to rainfall over the ORB region has not been given much
492 attention.

493

494 There is large climate variability over both space and time in southern Africa generally, with
495 recurring climate extremes such as temperature extremes (hot days, heat waves), droughts
496 and floods induced by extreme rainfall events (e.g., Tyson, 1986; Richard and Pocard, 1998;
497 Mulenga et al., 2003; Rouault and Richard, 2003; Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2005,
498 2006; Conway et al., 2015; Meque et al., 2022), which may be worsened by climate change
499 (IPCC, 2013, 2021; Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Munday and Washington, 2019; Wainwright et
500 al., 2021). The large climate variability in the region impacts rain-fed subsistence farming
501 and water availability.

502

503 Climate variability also has impacts on other aspects of the environment such as vegetation,
504 which are expressed in different ways across southern Africa. For instance, in the ORB
505 region, such impacts are reflected in vegetation patterns, which are thought to reflect those in
506 rainfall and the hydrological conditions (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006; Revermann et al.,
507 2016). However, it is not well understood whether climate influences on vegetation in the
508 drier regions in the south of the ORB are different from those in the wetter regions in the
509 north. The Normalised Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI; Tucker et al., 1991; 2005;
510 Pinzon and Tucker, 2014) is commonly used (Malo and Nicholson, 1990; Davenport and
511 Nicholson, 1993; Farrar et al., 1994; Nicholson and Farrar, 1994; Richard and Pocard, 1998;
512 Camberlin et al., 2007; Martiny et al., 2010; Richard et al., 2012) to assess vegetation
513 characteristics such as photosynthetic activity (greenness or brownness).

514

515 Factors contributing to climate variability in southern Africa are complex. They include sea
516 surface temperature (SST) anomalies in the neighbouring Indian and Atlantic oceans or in the
517 remote tropical Pacific. El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) in the tropical Pacific is known
518 to be the main interannual climate mode affecting southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et
519 al., 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018; Hart et al., 2018). However,
520 ENSO impacts may vary across the subcontinent. Not much attention has been paid to ENSO
521 impacts on droughts, temperature extremes and extreme rainfall events over the ORB region.
522 This could have been due to the tremendous lack of high-resolution observational data in this
523 region, particularly in Angola which was ravaged by civil war for 27 years until 2002
524 (Andersson et al., 2006; Hammond, 2011). Satellite-based data products are now available for
525 use and have been used successfully in southern Africa (e.g., Mahlalela et al., 2020; Thoithi
526 et al., 2021; Meque et al., 2022). Other climate modes such as the subtropical Indian Ocean
527 Dipole (SIOD; Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Reason, 2001a, the Southern Annular Mode

528 (SAM; Gillett et al., 2006) and the Benguela Niño (Rouault et al., 2003a; Hansingo and
529 Reason, 2009) may also affect the region on interannual scales.

530

531 ENSO drives variability of the South Indian Convergence Zone (SIOCZ; Cook, 2000;
532 Lazenby et al., 2016). This SIOCZ is a large-scale austral summer rainfall feature extending
533 across southern Africa into the southwest Indian Ocean, which provides the majority of
534 southern African rainfall (Cook, 2000; Lazenby et al., 2016). Variability of the SIOCZ is not
535 only driven by ENSO but also by the subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD; Lazenby et al.,
536 2016). ENSO may impact other regional circulation systems like the mid-level Botswana
537 High, which tends to suppress (enhance) rainfall when it is strong (weak) due to increased
538 (reduced) subsidence over the region (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). The
539 Botswana High forms at mid-levels (500 hPa), thermally induced in response to heat released
540 by high rainfall over the Congo Basin (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). It starts to
541 appear in August, strengthens through spring and by December it is strongly expressed over
542 southern Africa (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). This high-pressure system
543 weakens in March. Driver and Reason (2017) found the Botswana High to have a relationship
544 with dry spell frequencies over southern Africa, but this relationship has not been emphasised
545 over the ORB. There is need to better understand this relationship because dry spell
546 frequency is an important aspect of the rainy season which may affect crop growth (Usman
547 and Reason, 2004; Reason et al., 2005).

548

549 Other important factors contributing to climate variability over southern Africa include the
550 Congo Air Boundary through its meridional seasonal shifts. It has long been known that this
551 boundary is generated when the low-level westerlies which originate as recurved Atlantic
552 southeasterlies, meet with the low-level easterly trade winds from the Indian Ocean (Taljaard,
553 1972; Torrance, 1979). It manifests in southern Africa mainly between late winter and early
554 spring, and it exhibits intra-seasonal fluctuations north and south that can be associated with
555 rainfall variability (Torrance, 1979; Taljaard, 1986). Howard and Washington (2019, 2020)
556 showed that the Congo Air Boundary marks the location of the southern edge of the African
557 tropical rain-belt. However, a possible link between meridional seasonal shifts of the Congo
558 Air Boundary and dry spell frequencies has not been given a close consideration.

559

560 Evidence of warming trends (Barros and Field, 2014; Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et al.,
561 2018; Meque et al., 2022) and early summer drying (IPCC, 2021; Munday and Washington,

562 2019; Wainwright et al., 2021) over southern Africa has been provided. These trends may
563 have adverse impacts on rain-fed subsistence farming, water availability and ecosystems in
564 the region, motivating this study to assess these trends over particular regions in southern
565 Africa.

566

567 The principal aim of the thesis is to better understand potential relationships between climate,
568 photosynthetic vegetation activity (represented by NDVI) and river discharge over the ORB
569 region, as well as climate variability and extremes (droughts, hot days and extreme rainfall
570 events), during the extended austral summer (October-April) rainfall season, within the
571 period 1981-2021. Note that because rainfall events by their nature can extend over a larger
572 region than the ORB, the analysis of rainfall extremes is computed for a larger domain, called
573 western central southern Africa (WCSA), which includes the ORB within it. The thesis also
574 aims to better understand potential links of these variables with climate modes such as ENSO
575 and regional systems such as the Botswana High, as well as trends. These aims are achieved
576 by addressing the following questions:

577

578 **Chapter 4:**

- 579 ▪ How are the NDVI and river discharge influenced by rainfall and temperature
580 variability in the ORB region?
- 581 ▪ Are relationships between the NDVI and rainfall/temperature in the high rainfall
582 zone statistically different from those on the low rainfall zone?
- 583 ▪ Do large-scale climate modes, such as ENSO, impact strongly on NDVI, river
584 discharge, temperature and rainfall in the ORB region?

585

586 **Chapter 5:**

- 587 ▪ What are the characteristics of extreme rainfall events over the WCSA?
- 588 ▪ What are the most important weather systems driving these events?
- 589 ▪ What proportion of these extreme events contribute to summer rainfall totals?
- 590 ▪ What are the factors that might have contributed to the severe floods that occurred
591 over the Okavango Delta region (Ngamiland) during the summer of 2017?

592

593 **Chapter 6:**

- 594 ▪ How do spatial mean patterns in dry spell frequencies and in hot days vary
595 seasonally, and are there relationships with the African tropical rain-belt, Congo
596 Air Boundary and the Botswana High?
- 597 ▪ How do drought metrics and hot day frequencies vary interannually, and do they
598 show significant trends?
- 599 ▪ Do these variables have relationships with climate modes such as ENSO?

600

601 The thesis is organised as follows. **Chapter 2**, presented next, gives a review of relevant
602 literature. **Chapter 3** describes data and methods used. **Chapter 4** has already been
603 published, **Chapters 5** has been accepted for publication whereas and **Chapter 6** have been
604 submitted to journals for publication. These three chapters are included in the thesis as
605 published or submitted, and they address the questions posed therein. Word-for-word of some
606 material may occur in the thesis to preserve fidelity of the papers. **Chapter 7**, presented last,
607 gives a summary and conclusions of the thesis as a whole.

608

609 **Chapter 2: Literature Review**

610

611 The climate of subtropical southern Africa (area south of 10°S) is characterised by a strong
612 seasonal cycle (Tyson, 1986; Mason and Jury, 1997; Reason et al., 2006). Except for the
613 south-western Cape and the southern Cape coastal region which experience rainfall in austral
614 winter and throughout the year, respectively, most of subtropical southern Africa experiences
615 rainfall usually from October to March or April, which is mostly convective. May-September
616 is typically dry over the latter region. Important regional atmospheric circulation systems as
617 well as weather systems that influence the weather and climate of southern Africa are
618 discussed in *Section 2.1*.

619

620 Subtropical southern Africa also experiences highly variable weather and climate, both
621 spatially and temporally, with occurrences of droughts, temperature extremes and floods
622 resulting from extreme rainfall events being common (Tyson, 1986; Mason and Jury, 1997;
623 Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006; Lyon, 2009; Meque et al., 2022). Impacts of this
624 variability are manifested in various ways such as relationships in the variability of climatic
625 variables and vegetation patterns reviewed in *Section 2.5*. Climate variability in the ORB and
626 in subtropical southern Africa in general, is driven by conditions in the surrounding Indian
627 and Atlantic Oceans, discussed in *Section 2.2*, and those in the remote tropical Pacific,
628 discussed in *Section 2.3*. Other factors contributing to this variability include topography and
629 geographic location between the tropics and the midlatitudes. Thus, the climate of the region
630 is complex, responding to several factors that interact with each other on different time scales
631 (Allan et al., 2003; Reason and Rouault, 2002; Reason et al., 2006), hence it is not well
632 understood. Also, significant trends in rainfall and temperature have been found previously
633 over southern Africa, discussed in *Section 2.4*.

634

635 **2.1 Regional atmospheric circulation and weather systems of importance**

636

637 Important regional atmospheric circulation systems as well as weather systems that influence
638 the weather and climate of southern Africa are discussed. The SIOCZ is an important large-
639 scale austral summer rainfall feature with a northwest-southeast diagonal orientation,
640 extending from the southern African continent into the southwest Indian Ocean over the
641 southeast coast from 10°-40°S to 0°-60°E (Cook 1998, 2000). Interannual shift in its position

642 dominates austral summer climate variability over southern Africa and the southwestern
643 Indian Ocean (Cook, 2000). The SIOCZ is driven by the circulation around the Angola Low
644 and the South Indian High, and an additional influx from the northwestern region, all (these
645 three moisture flux pathways) of which converge at 850 hPa to form this feature (Cook, 2000;
646 Lazenby et al., 2016). The SIOCZ is significantly correlated with ENSO and the SIOD at the
647 95% confidence interval (Lazenby et al., 2016).

648

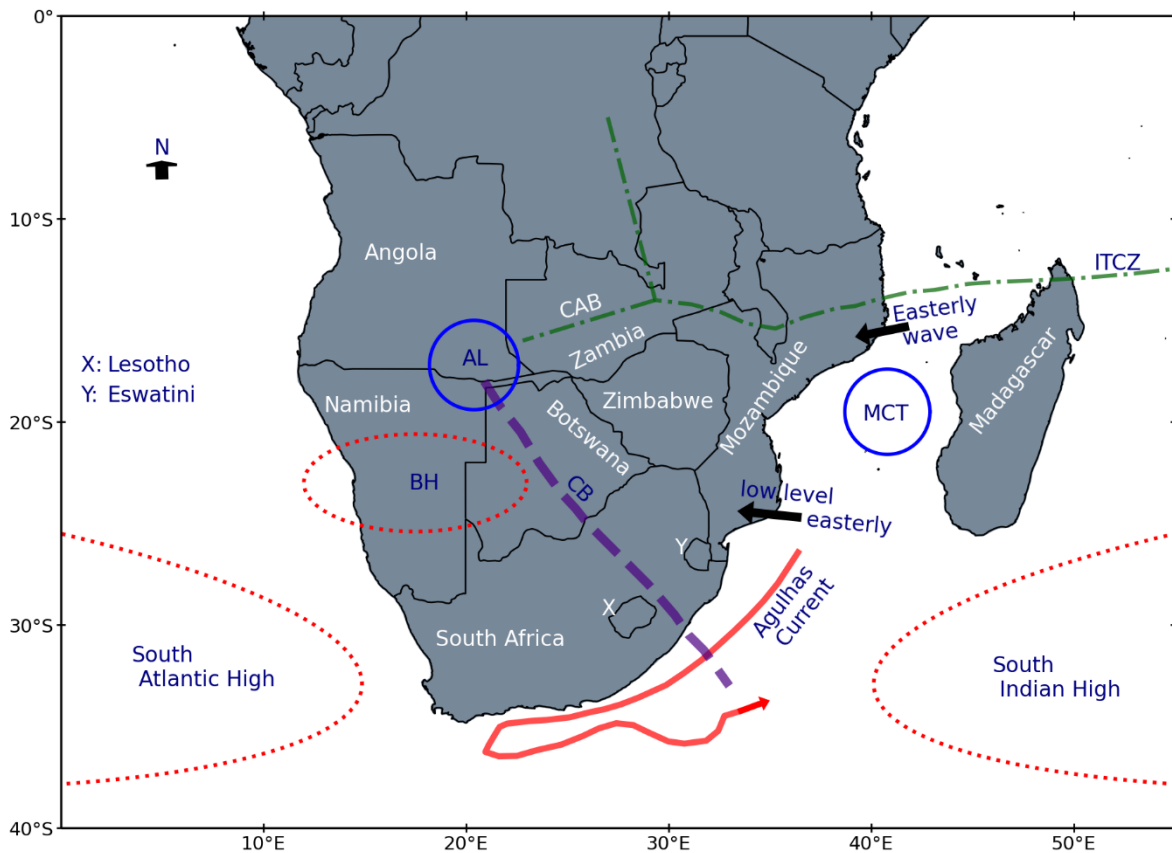
649 The Inter-Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) (**Figure 2.1**), which is distinct from the SIOCZ
650 (Cook, 2000), also plays an important role in defining the climate of subtropical southern
651 Africa through its meridional displacement (e.g., Tyson, 1986; van Heerden and Taljaard,
652 1998; Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006). From September, the ITCZ starts to shift from
653 north of the equator towards southern Africa. It reaches its southernmost position in February
654 when it lies across Madagascar and Mozambique Channel, with north easterly monsoon
655 towards Tanzania which then recurves over northern Mozambique and the Channel as
656 northwesterlies towards Madagascar. Droughts can occur over subtropical southern Africa if
657 the ITCZ does not shift as far south as usual, whereas if it shifts further south than usual, wet
658 summers can occur due to heavier and more persistent rains (Cook et al., 2004). From March,
659 the ITCZ retreats northwards such that by May, it lies north of the equator with strong
660 southeasterly flow along the Tanzanian and northern Mozambique coasts.

661

662 The ITCZ extends its meridional arm through the Congo Basin, which is a high rainfall
663 region. Over its seasonal cycle, the Congo Air Boundary (CAB) shifts from this Congo Basin
664 in spring to western Zambia/central Angola (north of the ORB) in early summer where it
665 eventually breaks down (Howard and Washington, 2019). The CAB is traditionally defined
666 as the location where the low-level westerlies which originate from the Atlantic as recurved
667 southeasterlies, converge with the low-level easterly trade winds from the Indian Ocean
668 (Taljaard, 1972; Torrance, 1979). More recently, using a novel algorithm to understand the
669 regional circulation complexities, Howard and Washington (2019) included the humidity
670 component to this definition, and defined the CAB as a band of surface humidity gradient
671 and/or near-surface wind convergence located at the northern edge of the easterly Indian
672 Ocean trade winds and the southern edge of the low-level westerlies. These authors found the
673 CAB to be an indicator of the location of the southern edge of the African tropical rain-belt.
674 Note that Thompson (1965) and Torrance (1979) made a clear delineation between the CAB

675 and the ITCZ, and that Leroux (2001) described that moving polar highs may play a role in
 676 controlling the anomalous movement of the CAB.

677



678

679 **Figure 2.1** A schematic [adapted from Driver and Reason (2017)] showing common synoptic
 680 features that influence the weather and climate of southern Africa during summer. These
 681 features are labelled and are discussed in the text. They include the Botswana High (BH),
 682 Angola Low (AL), tropical-extratropical cloud bands (CB), the ITCZ over the western Indian
 683 Ocean, Congo Air Boundary (CAB), South Atlantic High (St. Helena High), South Indian
 684 High (Mascarene High), Mozambique Channel Trough (MCT), Agulhas Current, tropical
 685 low-level easterlies and easterly waves.

686

687 Over its seasonal cycle, the CAB prevents incursion of unstable moist Congo air into
 688 subtropical southern Africa until it breaks down in November/December, after which more
 689 rainfall occurs over many subtropical areas (Dunning et al., 2016; Howard and Washington,
 690 2019) including the ORB. Thus, the CAB plays a crucial role in the climate of subtropical
 691 southern Africa through its meridional seasonal shifts. However, as indicated earlier, a

692 potential link between seasonal shifts of this boundary and patterns in dry spells has not been
693 given much attention.

694

695 It is worth noting that use of the ITCZ paradigm over the African landmass has been
696 criticised by Nicholson (2018). The author argues that as the surface wind convergence
697 maxima and the locations of rainfall maxima do not coincide, the traditional model of trade
698 wind convergence setting the location of rainfall does not hold. Howard and Washington
699 (2019) showed that over the tropical rain-belt, the relative humidity features very little
700 gradient and is typically $> 95\%$, reflecting that little wind convergence is required to reach
701 saturation, which is in support of Nicholson (2018). However, Howard and Washington
702 (2019) demonstrated that surface wind convergence collocated with the edge of the tropical
703 rain-belt is crucial in setting the location of the southern edge of the rain-belt in spring and
704 early summer. Although the findings of Nicholson (2018) and Howard and Washington
705 (2019) are crucial, additional research is required to better understand the link between the
706 surface wind convergence and rainfall maxima.

707

708 The Botswana High (**Figure 2.1**), well expressed at mid-levels, i.e., at 500 mb (it is not well
709 understood why this system appears at the mid-levels, not at the high-levels), typically forms
710 in August to the southwest of the Congo Basin, thermally induced in response to heat
711 released by high rainfall over this Congo Basin (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). It
712 then shifts poleward over southern Africa and at the same time strengthening during the
713 spring and early summer (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). In late summer, it retreats
714 northward. On average, its centre during summer is located over central Namibia/western
715 Botswana (**Figure 2.1**), which includes the southern ORB (**Figure 1.1b**). This important
716 high-pressure system is linked with subsidence, and its weakening (strengthening) is typically
717 linked with above (below) average rainfall over subtropical southern Africa. Although its
718 relationship with patterns in dry spells over southern Africa has been considered previously
719 (Driver and Reason, 2017), not much attention has been paid to this relationship over the
720 ORB region.

721

722 Further south of the ITCZ but over the surrounding southern Atlantic and southern Indian
723 Oceans, there are two other important high-pressure systems, namely, the South Atlantic
724 High (also known as the St. Helena High) and the South Indian High (also known as the
725 Mascarene High), respectively (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000, 2015) (**Figure 2.1**). These

726 semi-permanent near-surface anticyclonic systems are linked with the Southern Hemisphere
727 subtropical belt around 30°S. The St. Helena High, on average has seasonal shifts of ~13°
728 zonally and ~6° meridionally between summer and winter (Reason et al., 2006). These
729 seasonal shifts drive changes in surface winds such that they are only upwelling favourable
730 along the west coast of South Africa in summer, but are such all year round along the
731 Namibian coast. During summer, the zonal movement and intensification of the St. Helena
732 High near southwestern southern Africa, is linked with the development of a coastal low-
733 level jet along the Namibian coast (Nicholson, 2009; Lima et al., 2018).

734

735 On average, the Mascarene High has a zonal shift of 24° between summer and winter (Tyson
736 and Preston-Whyte, 2000). A stronger (weaker) Mascarene High is associated with increased
737 (decreased) moisture transport from the Indian Ocean towards southeastern Africa, resulting
738 in increased (decreased) rainfall over the latter region (Reason and Mulenga, 1999; Behera
739 and Yamagata, 2001; Cook et al., 2004; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Reason et al., 2006;
740 Manhique et al., 2011; Munday and Washington, 2017; Blamey et al., 2018).

741

742 Ridging of the Mascarene High in the northwest direction together with the Mozambique
743 Channel Trough (MCT) (**Figure 2.1**), which is a low-pressure area over the central/southern
744 Mozambique Channel, can produce an easterly flow into Mozambique and eastern South
745 Africa (Cook et al., 2004; Hart et al., 2010; Ratna et al., 2013; Munday and Washington,
746 2017; Barimalala et al., 2018, 2020). This regional circulation feature is prominent in austral
747 summer. Barimalala et al. (2018, 2020) noted that formation of the MCT is related to the
748 dynamical adjustment of the easterlies flowing over the Madagascan high topography and
749 that this system can be sustained by local air-sea interaction of relatively warm SST over the
750 Mozambique Channel. A strong (weak) MCT tends to be associated with decreased
751 (increased) moisture penetrating into the southern African mainland from the southwest
752 Indian and the tropical western Indian Oceans, which can lead to rainfall decrease (increase)
753 during austral summer (Barimalala et al., 2018, 2020). Further south, anticyclonic ridging
754 along the south and east coasts of South Africa is an important contributor to summer rainfall
755 over the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu Natal (Weldon and Reason, 2014; Dyson, 2015;
756 Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Ndarana et al., 2020).

757

758 Another important regional circulation system is the Angola Low (**Figure 2.1**) mentioned
759 earlier. This near-surface cyclonic feature develops over southern Angola/northern Namibia

760 (Mulenga et al., 2003; Reason et al., 2006; Ratna et al., 2013; Munday and Washington,
761 2017; Howard and Washington, 2018; Cretat et al., 2019; Pascale et al., 2019), and is defined
762 as a heat low during its development stage in October-November and a tropical low during
763 January-February when it strengthens considerably (Munday and Washington, 2017; Howard
764 and Washington, 2018). The development of the Angola Low in October-November is
765 associated with dry convection driven by intense surface heating (e.g., Rácz and Smith,
766 1999), and then in December, it develops a vertical structure dominated by moist convection
767 (Munday and Washington 2017; Howard and Washington 2018) typical of a tropical low.
768 Variations in the strength and location of the Angola low affect moisture transport from the
769 southeast Atlantic and western tropical Indian Oceans into the interior (Cook et al. 2004;
770 Reason et al., 2006; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Fauchereau et al. 2009; Crétat et al., 2018). A
771 stronger (weaker) Angola Low is associated with increased (decreased) moisture advection
772 which result in increases (decreases) in seasonal rainfall in the region.

773

774 The Angola Low also acts as a tropical source region for the tropical-extratropical cloud
775 bands (**Figure 2.1**) which bring most of the rainfall over subtropical southern Africa during
776 summer and are sometimes associated with heavy rainfall events (Harrison, 1984; Todd and
777 Washington, 1999; Fauchereau et al., 2009; Hart et al., 2010, 2013, 2018; Ratna et al., 2013;
778 Macron et al., 2014). These cloud bands, which typically extend in a northwest-southeast
779 direction from southern Angola to the southwest Indian Ocean, develop from the interaction
780 of tropical and extratropical systems (typically a cold front). They also help export moisture
781 and heat from the tropics to the midlatitudes (Hart et al., 2010). The preferred axis of the
782 tropical-extratropical cloud bands constitutes the SIOCZ (Cook, 2000; Lazenby et al., 2016;
783 Blamey et al., 2018).

784

785 Other weather systems known to make important contributions to rainfall over subtropical
786 southern Africa include tropical lows (Munday and Washington, 2017; Howard et al., 2019;
787 Howard and Washington, 2020; Rapolaki et al., 2019, 2020) and random air mass
788 thunderstorms or organised MCSs (Blamey and Reason, 2009, 2012, 2013; Morake et al.,
789 2021). However, the importance of MCSs, tropical lows as well as tropical-extratropical
790 cloud bands to some aspects of the rainfall season such as extreme rainfall events over the
791 ORB region have not been given much attention. MCSs tend to be more frequent during
792 November-February (Blamey and Reason, 2012; Morake et al., 2021). Typically, the
793 organisation of MCSs is characterised by different processes, namely, available moisture

794 sources (e.g., warm ocean), strong heating of sufficiently moist and unstable air masses over
795 land, a lifting mechanism such as high topography, and favourable wind shear (Laing et al.,
796 2008; Rehbein et al., 2018). Tropical lows are more frequent during the late summer
797 (Rapolaki et al., 2019). Tropical lows that occur over oceans may intensify into tropical
798 cyclones when conditions are conducive (e.g., large and continuous supply of warm and
799 moist air, high sea temperatures $\geq 27^{\circ}\text{C}$, low wind shear, converging winds near the ocean
800 surface, an upper level outflow of air), but those that occur over land and do not intensify are
801 much less disastrous than tropical cyclones, as well as more frequent (Malan et al., 2013;
802 Hunt and Fletcher, 2019; Howard et al., 2019).

803

804 Tropical cyclones, developing from tropical lows as already mentioned, are known to cause
805 intense rainfall mainly during the late summer (Tyson and Preston-Whyte, 2000; Dyson and
806 van Heerden, 2001; Reason and Keibel, 2004; Reason, 2007; Mavume et al., 2009; Malherbe
807 et al., 2012; Fitchett and Grab, 2014; Mawren et al., 2020). It is estimated that on average,
808 nine tropical cyclones or eleven if tropical storms are included, develop in the southwest
809 Indian Ocean on an annual basis, of which only 5% make landfall over the southern African
810 mainland (Reason, 2007; Mavume et al., 2009). Often, tropical cyclones cause widespread
811 flooding over the eastern coastal areas, and occasionally, also over the eastern interior of the
812 subcontinent, which may be related to the strength of the convective cells. Easterly
813 disturbances may also occasionally penetrate further west across subtropical southern Africa
814 from the southern Indian Ocean and cause flooding there (Dyson and van Heerden, 2001;
815 Reason and Keibel, 2004).

816

817 Cut-off lows make large contributions to rainfall often over a short period of time, hence may
818 lead to flash-flooding (Singleton and Reason, 2006, 2007; Favre et al., 2012, 2013). These
819 weather systems occur in all seasons, but with an annual frequency maximum in autumn and
820 a secondary maximum in spring (Singleton and Reason, 2007; Pinheiro et al., 2017). It is not
821 well understood why frequency maximum and secondary maximum of cut-off lows occur in
822 autumn and spring, respectively. Cold fronts contribute to rainfall mainly over the extreme
823 southern parts of southern Africa. The southwestern Cape region of South Africa, which is
824 mainly a winter rainfall region, receives its rainfall mainly from cold fronts (Harrison, 1984;
825 Reason et al., 2006). These weather systems also contribute to rainfall received over the south
826 coast of South Africa, an all-season rainfall region. During summer, cold fronts also play an

827 important role in the development of tropical-extratropical cloud bands as already alluded to
828 (Hart et al., 2010).

829

830 **2.2 Adjacent Oceans and interannual variability of southern Africa rainfall**

831

832 The tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean, western tropical Indian Ocean and the southwest
833 Indian Ocean are the primary oceanic sources of atmospheric moisture transported into
834 subtropical southern Africa during austral summer (Walker, 1990; D'Abreton and Tyson,
835 1995; Mason, 1995; Reason and Mulenga, 1999; Rouault et al., 2003a; Cook et al., 2004;
836 Reason et al., 2006; Hansingo and Reason, 2009; Vigaud et al., 2009; Manhique et al., 2015;
837 Reason and Smart, 2015), and, the Congo Basin is an important continental source through
838 evaporation (D'Abreton and Tyson, 1995; Rapolaki et al., 2020). While most climate studies
839 in the region have often considered tropical southeast Atlantic influences to be not as
840 important as those emanating from the tropical western Indian Ocean (Reason et al., 2006), it
841 can make important contributions during some summer seasons (Rouault et al., 2003; Cook et
842 al., 2004; Hansingo and Reason, 2009; Vigaud et al., 2009; Reason and Smart, 2015;
843 Rapolaki et al., 2020). North of ~15°S, tropical South Atlantic influences during summer are
844 important via westerly moisture flux linked with the Angola low (Rouault et al., 2003a;
845 Reason et al., 2006). Moisture transported from the adjacent oceans into the subcontinent
846 may be affected by the strength of this Angola Low, which increases (decreases) when the
847 Low is stronger (weaker) than usual (e.g., Cook et al., 2004; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Hart et
848 al., 2010; Blamey et al., 2018).

849

850 Latent heat released from another important moisture source, the warm Agulhas Current
851 (**Figure 2.1**) region off the south coast of southern Africa, may have significant influence on
852 the regional atmospheric circulation, rainfall received over large parts of neighbouring
853 southern Africa, and may strengthen cold fronts passing there which may aid the
854 development of the midlatitude component of the tropical-extratropical cloud bands (Walker
855 and Mey, 1988; Walker 1990; Jury et al., 1993; Mason, 1995; Crimp et al., 1998; Reason,
856 1998; Reason and Mulenga, 1999; Reason, 2001b; Rouault et al., 2002; Rouault et al.,
857 2003b). A shift of the Mascarene High further eastward from the southeast coast of South
858 Africa creates favourable conditions for these cold fronts to track closer to the south coast of
859 southern Africa, increasing the prospect for cloud band formation (Harrison, 1984; Hart et al.,

860 2010; 2013). Latent heat fluxes from the Agulhas Current region also play a role in the
861 development of cut-off lows (Singleton and Reason, 2006), MCSs (Blamey and Reason,
862 2009) and may also play a role on the storm track activity that might affect the rainfall
863 variability in southern Africa (Nakamura, 2012).

864

865 Significant relationships between SST anomalies in the adjacent oceans and rainfall
866 variability over southern Africa have been found often through the expression of regional
867 climate modes such as the subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD) and the Benguela Niño.
868 The SIOD, defined as the normalised difference in SST anomalies between two poles, one
869 over the southwestern Indian Ocean south of Madagascar and the other one over the
870 southeastern Indian Ocean near western Australia (Behera and Yamagata, 2001), may affect
871 southern Africa on interannual scales. Warmer than usual SST over the former pole and
872 cooler than usual SST over the latter pole, a condition referred to as the positive phase of the
873 SIOD, is associated with rainfall increase over subtropical southern Africa landmass during
874 summer, whereas the reverse polarity is associated with rainfall decrease (Behera and
875 Yamagata, 2001; Reason, 2001a, 2002). Often, this climate mode develops in December-
876 January and peaks in February (Behera and Yamagata, 2001). It is thought that the evolution
877 of SIOD events is influenced by the Mascarene High (Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Hermes
878 and Reason, 2005).

879

880 Benguela Niños occur in the southeast Atlantic Ocean typically in late summer (Shannon et
881 al., 1986; Reason et al., 2006; Rouault et al., 2018; Koungue et al., 2019). These Benguela
882 Niños are sporadic, strong warm events close to the frontal area between the southward-
883 flowing Angola Current and the Benguela upwelling system off southwestern Africa
884 (Shannon et al., 1986; Reason et al., 2006). They have been associated with above average
885 rainfall particularly in Angola and Namibia, and in some cases in other parts of southern
886 Africa (Hirst and Hastenrath, 1983; Rouault et al., 2003a; Hansingo and Reason, 2009;
887 Reason and Smart, 2015). The strong warmth associated with Benguela Niño events may
888 imply more evaporation, which may contribute to the regional rainfall increase associated
889 with these events.

890

891 Other climate modes in the Atlantic that have potentials in affecting the southern African
892 rainfall include the South Atlantic Subtropical Dipole (SASD; Venegas et al., 1997) and the
893 Atlantic Meridional Mode (AMM; Chiang and Vimont, 2004). The AMM is the dominant

894 source of coupled ocean-atmosphere variability in the Atlantic, and it has a significant
895 influence on the interannual-to-decadal variability in the interhemispheric SST gradient
896 within the tropical Atlantic (Chiang and Vimont, 2004; Amaya et al., 2016). The SASD,
897 which is the dominant mode of variability of SST in the South Atlantic, has been found to
898 display seasonal variability similar to that of the SIOD (discussed above), with their peaks in
899 austral summer (Morioka et al., 2012). Boschat et al. (2013) linked the interannual variability
900 of these two modes to ENSO. Like the SIOD, the SASD exerts a great influence on
901 precipitation in the region (Reason, 2001a; 2002; Vigaud et al., 2009; Morioka et al., 2012).

902

903 **2.3 ENSO, Southern Annular Mode and interannual variability of southern Africa** 904 **rainfall**

905

906 In addition to influences from the surrounding oceans, the regional circulation of southern
907 Africa is also influenced by the Southern Annular Mode (SAM) and ENSO. The SAM is the
908 major interannual mode in the mid- to high-latitude Southern Hemispheric atmospheric
909 circulation (Hall and Visbeck, 2001; Marshall, 2003; Gillet et al, 2006). It consists of an
910 oscillation in the atmospheric pressure between the Southern Hemispheric midlatitudes near
911 40°S and the Antarctic region near 65°S, with this mode being positive when the pressure is
912 unusually low over the latter region and unusually high over the former region (Gong and
913 Wang, 1999; Thompson and Wallace, 2000). It is the reverse for the negative SAM. A
914 positive SAM generates anomalous easterly flow over east and southeast of South Africa,
915 which weakens approaching cold fronts and prevents moisture advection into the
916 southwestern coastal region of the country, which often cause a decrease in winter rainfall
917 there (Reason and Rouault, 2005, Mahlalela et al., 2019). Gillett et al. (2006) found the SAM
918 to have a positive relationship with summer rainfall over southeastern southern Africa while
919 Reason and Rouault (2005) found a negative relationship over the western Cape region of
920 South Africa with winter rainfall, but the influence of this climate mode over other parts of
921 southern Africa is not well understood.

922

923 ENSO in the tropical Pacific Ocean is a major driver of interannual climate variability over
924 tropical southern Africa during the summer (Lindesay, 1988; Nicholson and Kim, 1997;
925 Rocha and Simmonds, 1997; Reason et al., 2000; Cook, 2001; Reason and Jagadheesha,
926 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al., 2018; Crétat et al., 2018; Hart et al., 2018;
927 Driver et al., 2019). Warm (El Niño) and cool (La Niña) ENSO events tend to suppress and

928 enhance rainfall, respectively. Whether a particular ENSO event modulates the Angola Low
929 significantly or not, may influence the level of the impact. For example, the expected drought
930 conditions during the 1997/98 and 2009/10 El Niño events did not happen because the
931 Angola Low, which, as highlighted earlier, acts as the source for the tropical-extratropical
932 cloud bands did not weaken as it usually does during a typical El Niño event (Reason and
933 Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al., 2018; Driver et al., 2019).
934 However, the mechanism by which ENSO modulates the Angola Low is not well understood.
935 The fact that during 1997/98 and 2009/10 the Angola Low did not weaken as it usually does
936 during a typical El Niño event indicates that it may modulate the influence of ENSO
937 somehow and regulate the regional rainfall variability over southern Africa. Note that in this
938 thesis, ENSO was found to correlate significantly with the Angola Low at the 95%
939 significance level, during October-November (0.38), May-April (0.31) and December-
940 February (0.72), over the period 1981-2021.

941

942 During El Niño events, the tropical-extratropical cloud bands tend to shift further eastwards
943 from southern Africa interior to the western Indian Ocean, resulting in dry conditions over
944 the interior and enhanced rainfall offshore (Lindesay et al., 1986; Mason and Jury, 1997;
945 Cook, 2000, 2001; Mulenga et al., 2003; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Fauchereau et al.,
946 2009; Ratnam et al., 2014; Hart et al., 2018). On the other hand, during La Niña events, these
947 cloud bands are often located over the interior, resulting in above average rainfall. It is
948 thought that such variations in the position of the cloud bands during ENSO events occur
949 through modification of the Indian Ocean Walker cell, whose ascending limb shifts further
950 eastwards from southern Africa interior to the western Indian Ocean during El Niño events,
951 whereas during La Niña events, it is located over the interior resulting in strong convection
952 there (e.g., Harrison, 1986; Lindesay, 1988; Cook, 2001). Hart et al. (2018) found that during
953 La Niña, eddy-driven subtropical jets are common over mainland southern Africa thereby
954 favouring tropical-extratropical cloud band development, whereas during El Niño, the
955 likelihood of these jets is reduced and hence the likelihood of cloud band development is also
956 reduced. ENSO events may also modulate regional atmospheric systems such as the
957 Botswana High, which tends to be stronger (weaker) during El Niño (La Niña), which may
958 help suppress (enhance) rainfall over southern Africa (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason,
959 2017). As in the case for the Angola Low, the mechanism by which ENSO modulates the
960 Botswana High is not well understood. This may be through changes in the local rainfall over

961 the Congo Basin or large-scale atmospheric circulation changes such as Walker/Hadley cell
962 in the tropics and Rossby wave propagation from midlatitudes.

963

964 The link between El Niño events and droughts is complicated because droughts can also
965 occur during non-El Niño years and those that are El Niño related may not always be severe
966 or widespread. Also, it is not completely understood how the dry and wet conditions are
967 generated during ENSO events or as highlighted above, the mechanisms by which regional
968 atmospheric circulations are modulated. Furthermore, ENSO impacts may be complicated by
969 SST patterns in the Indian and Atlantic Oceans surrounding southern Africa, which may
970 influence the circulation and rainfall patterns over southern Africa either independent of
971 ENSO (Reason, 2001a; Washington and Preston, 2006) or both partially dependent on ENSO
972 (Goddard and Graham, 1999; Hoell et al., 2015), and which may also reinforce or oppose
973 ENSO impacts (Reason and Smart, 2015; Hoell et al., 2017).

974

975 The response of southern African rainfall to El Niño impacts, investigated more recently, has
976 been found to vary depending on how the anomalous warming in the tropical Pacific is
977 distributed (Ratnam et al., 2014; Preethi et al., 2015). During atypical El Niño, SST
978 anomalies are warmer in the central Pacific and cooler in the eastern and western Pacific
979 whereas during a typical El Niño, SST anomalies are warmer in the eastern Pacific (Ashok et
980 al., 2007; Kao and Yu, 2009). The former type of El Niño is referred to as El Niño Modoki,
981 central Pacific El Niño or warm pool El Niño (Kao and Yu, 2009; Kug et al., 2009; Yeh et
982 al., 2009). Impacts of El Niño Modoki and typical El Niño events may vary around the globe
983 due to differences in the Walker circulation and the teleconnection patterns generated by
984 these events (Ashok et al., 2007; Weng et al., 2009; Ashok and Yamagata, 2009; Feng et al.,
985 2010; Taschetto et al., 2010; Ratnam et al., 2011, 2014; Tadeschi et al., 2013; Hoell et al.,
986 2015; Preethi et al., 2015). Although southern Africa generally experiences below normal
987 rainfall during both El Niño Modoki and typical El Niño events, the anomalies tend to be
988 larger during the latter (Ratnam et al., 2014).

989

990 **2.4 General climate trends over southern Africa**

991

992 This section discusses trends in temperatures and rainfall previously found over southern
993 Africa. For temperatures, Jury (2013) found significant increasing historical temperature
994 trends of up to 0.3°C/decade in the 20th century over southern Africa, based on various

995 datasets that included gridded datasets of the National Climate Data Centre (NCDC; Smith et
996 al., 2008). Engelbrecht et al. (2015) found significant warming historical trends in the
997 observed annual average time series over subtropical southern Africa during the period of
998 1961-2010, based on the Climatic Research Unit (CRU) homogenised time series data for 5°
999 longitude x 5° latitude grid boxes (Jones et al., 2012). Meque et al. (2022), using 2m
1000 temperature data from ERA5 reanalyses (Copernicus Climate Change Service, 2017), found
1001 significant positive trend in heat wave numbers over the northern part of southern Africa
1002 during the entire November-March season, over the period 1981-2018.

1003

1004 Jury (2013) found a temperature increase of 2°C in the future (by the end of the 21st century)
1005 over southern Africa, based on global circulation models such as the Institut Pierre Simon
1006 Laplace (IPSL; Hourdin et al., 2006). Engelbrecht et al. (2015), using the conformal-cubic
1007 atmospheric model (CCAM; McGregor and Dix., 2008) of the Commonwealth Scientific and
1008 Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO), projected plausible temperature increases of 4-
1009 6°C over this region in the future, i.e., by the end of the 21st century (relative to 1961-2010).
1010 Using regional climate model simulations from the Coordinated Regional Downscaling
1011 Experiment Africa domain (CORDEX-Africa; Giorgi et al., 2009), Maure et al. (2018) found
1012 temperature increases of 0.5-1.5°C and 1.5-2.5°C over southern Africa for the global
1013 warming levels of 1.5°C and 2.0°C, respectively, by the end of the 21st century (relative to
1014 1971-2000). They found the largest warming trends over South Africa, Namibia and
1015 Botswana particularly during September-November. The high amplitude of warming over
1016 southern Africa predicted by the CCAM model compared to the warming predicted by the
1017 CORDEX-Africa project could be related to differences in the reference period, model
1018 resolution and physics. Note that the future warming trend is larger than the historical
1019 warming trend, which may be related to the anticipated increase in concentrations of
1020 greenhouse gases in the atmosphere (e.g., IPCC, 2013, 2021).

1021

1022 For rainfall, Karypidou et al. (2021) found a good agreement in rainfall historical trends in
1023 terms of the signal and the magnitude of the trend, calculated using satellite and gauge-based
1024 observations [included CPC Merged Analysis of Precipitation (CMAP) at 2.5° resolution, and
1025 Global Precipitation Climatology Centre (GPCC) at 0.5° resolution] over southern Africa, on
1026 monthly basis (October-March) during the period 1986-2005. Generally, these authors found
1027 decreasing (increasing) rainfall trends during October and February (November, December,
1028 January and March) over the bulk of southern Africa. Also, they found the CORDEX-Africa

1029 and CMIP5 ensembles to underestimate the trends when compared to satellite and gauge-
1030 based trends during their period of study. In addition, these authors found persistent drying in
1031 CMIP6 ensemble over most of southern Africa, in contrast to the satellite and gauge-based
1032 trends.

1033

1034 A spatially more limited study conducted by MacKellar et al. (2014) using station data, found
1035 no significant trends generally, in mean rainfall over South Africa during December-February
1036 and June-August, 1960-2010, but during March-May and September-November, these
1037 authors found significant decreasing trends over some parts of the eastern half of the country.
1038 For most seasons, they also found significant increasing trends in the observed mean
1039 temperatures over South Africa except for the central interior. Comparing the observed trends
1040 with statistically downscaled global climate models, MacKellar et al. (2014) found that the
1041 models tended to show an opposite rainfall trend to that in the observations, whereas for
1042 temperature trends, the observations and the models were consistent.

1043

1044 Thoithi et al. (2021) found two sharp horizontal gradients in dry spell frequency during
1045 December-February (1982-2019), one extending southeast from southern Angola to the south
1046 coast of South Africa (termed diagonal gradient), and the other one extending west from the
1047 Limpopo River Valley along 22°-24°S (termed meridional gradient). They found the former
1048 dry spell gradient to be weakening whereas for the latter dry spell gradient, a part of it (over
1049 northern Botswana/western Zimbabwe and northeastern South Africa) also showed a
1050 weakening trend. These authors also found increasing trends in December-February moderate
1051 (10-30 mm/day) wet days over parts of southern Africa such as central Angola,
1052 Zambian/Democratic Republic of Congo border, western Zimbabwe/eastern Botswana, and
1053 the northern tip of Madagascar. The increasing trends in the wet days are consistent with the
1054 weakening trends in dry spell gradients.

1055

1056 For future rainfall trends, Maúre et al. (2018), using regional climate model simulations from
1057 the CORDEX-Africa, found a decrease of up to ~20% (during September-November) of the
1058 climatological values over parts of South Africa and Zambia under the 1.5°C global warming
1059 level by the end of the 21st century. They also found a slight increase of up to 0.1 mm/day
1060 over a few areas such as southern Namibia during the same period. Under the 2.0°C global
1061 warming level, these authors found rainfall to decrease by 10-20% over most of central
1062 southern Africa. However, these authors noted large model uncertainty on rainfall change as

1063 less than 80% of the models agree on the sign of change. Munday and Washington (2019),
1064 using Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase 5 (CMIP5; Taylor et al. 2012) models,
1065 found drying trends in 95% of the models in the early summer (October-December) over
1066 subtropical southern Africa by the end of the 21st century. However, they found an order of
1067 magnitude difference in the scale of rainfall decline between models, which ranged from 10
1068 to 100 mm/season, and they also found that the models systematically overestimate present-
1069 day early summer rainfall. Due to the large spread between the models and overestimates of
1070 present-day early summer rainfall, Munday and Washington (2019) noted that an agreement
1071 between models in the sign of the projected change is not necessarily a strong argument for
1072 confidence in the projection.

1073
1074 Wainwright et al. (2021), using an ensemble of Coupled Model Intercomparison Project
1075 Phase 6 (CMIP6; Eyring et al. 2016) and CMIP5 models, found delays of up to two weeks in
1076 the onset of the wet seasons by 2070-2099 over southern Africa. They also found an increase
1077 in both mean and maximum dry spell length during the dry season over this region. These
1078 authors used an objective methodology to determine the timing of the wet and dry season at
1079 each location, which enabled investigation of changes in these seasons using a location-
1080 specific, not month-based, seasonal definition.

1081
1082 The warming and drying trends found by previous studies may have unfavourable impacts on
1083 rain-fed subsistence farming, water availability and ecosystems. Therefore, there is need to
1084 assess these trends over particular regions in southern Africa such as the ORB.

1085

1086 **2.5 Climate, vegetation and river discharge over the ORB region**

1087

1088 This section discusses previous research that examined relationships in the variability of
1089 climatic variables, vegetation and hydrological patterns over the ORB region. Such
1090 relationships are an indication of climate influences on vegetation and hydrological patterns.

1091

1092 Before discussing such relationships, it is useful to discuss key features of the ORB. The
1093 ORB extends from a high rainfall zone in the Angolan Highlands to a low rainfall zone in
1094 northwestern Botswana (**Figures 1.1** and **1.2**). The Angolan Highlands are the highest section
1095 of this basin, with an elevation of up to 1800 m above sea level (**Figure 1.1a**). Sections of the
1096 ORB that lie over Botswana and Namibian are relatively flat, with the highest elevation of

1097 about 1300 m above sea level. This basin comprises of two main rivers, the Cubango and
1098 Cuito, which originate from the Angolan Highlands and merge in southeastern Angola to
1099 form the Okavango River which then feeds into the Okavango Delta in northwestern
1100 Botswana (**Figure 1.1** and **1.2**). The discharge of this river into the Delta is measured at
1101 Mohebo (**Figure 1.1b**). Thus, flooding in the Delta results mainly from the annual flood
1102 wave originating from the Angolan section of the ORB (Andersson et al., 2003; Wolski et al.,
1103 2006; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008). Although rains that fall over the Delta contribute
1104 to the interannual variability of flood magnitude mainly by way of “wetting” the system
1105 before the arrival of the Okavango River flood wave rather than by inducing flooding itself,
1106 in well above average rainfall years, local rain induced floods do occur (Wolski et al., 2006).
1107 Wetting the system by local rains means the soil is made wet making it easy for saturation to
1108 be reached when the Okavango River flood wave arrives. Rainfall that occurs over the Delta
1109 and over the ORB generally as well as over the adjoining areas is also important for
1110 agricultural activities. However, extreme rainfall events as well as other climate extremes
1111 such as droughts and temperature extremes have not been well studied over the ORB.

1112

1113 Vegetation cover in the Angolan section of the ORB predominantly forms part of the
1114 Miombo woodlands, which become increasingly less dense with distance towards the
1115 southern border of Angola (Frost, 1996; Revermann et al., 2016). In portions of this ORB
1116 section, other species such as dense evergreen *Brachystegia* woodland (e.g., *Julbernardia*
1117 *paniculate*) do occur, as well as geoxylic grasslands in the mid and bottom slopes of the
1118 valleys (Mendelson and el Obeid, 2004; Revermann et al., 2016). Further south, in relatively
1119 dry southern Angola extending into Namibia, the species composition changes to more open
1120 *Baikiaea-Burkea* woodlands (Kgathi et al., 2006; Revermann et al., 2016). Shrubs and
1121 grasslands are also prominent in this area stretching south-southeastwards towards
1122 northwestern Botswana, where the proportion of woody species decreases further due to a
1123 drier climate. More vegetation has been cleared in portions of the mid Okavango in Namibia
1124 for agricultural purposes than in the Angolan part of the ORB (Kgathi et al., 2006). However,
1125 subsistence farming is practiced across the ORB in general, with maize and millet being
1126 commonly used (Kgathi et al., 2006; Weinzierl and Schilling, 2013).

1127

1128 In the Delta in northwestern Botswana, typically, tall reeds and *Cyperus papyrus* occur in
1129 deeper water, whereas channel fringe and floodplain vegetation are dominated by emergent
1130 graminoid macrophytes (sedges and grasses) which have varying tolerance for flooding,

1131 depending on whether they are seasonal swamp or perennial swamp communities (SMEC,
1132 1986; Ringrose et al., 1988; Smith, 1976; Ellery et al., 2003; Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). In
1133 areas adjoining the Delta, Mopane (*Colophospermum mopane*) woodlands do occur mainly
1134 on the east/northeast, and Acacia woodlands (*Acacia erioloba*, *Acacia tortilis*) occur mainly
1135 to the southwest/west (Kgathi et al., 2006). In a nutshell, the high rainfall zone in the Angolan
1136 Highlands has a greater proportion of thicker woodland than elsewhere in the ORB, with
1137 more grassland in the low rainfall zone in northwestern Botswana. The ORB vegetation as
1138 well as its streamflow supports highly biodiverse and sensitive wildlife species in the area,
1139 which are important for tourism, a major source of income (Mbaiwa, 2004, 2015, 2017;
1140 Kgathi et al., 2006; Weinzierl and Schilling, 2013).

1141
1142 Studies that examined relationships in the variability of climatic variables and vegetation
1143 patterns are now discussed. In semi-arid regions of Africa, rainfall variability is regarded as
1144 the most important issue for agricultural activities, vegetation growth and ecosystems
1145 (Camberlin et al., 2007; Martiny et al., 2010). On a continental scale, over Africa, Camberlin
1146 et al. (2007) examined the response of photosynthetic vegetation activity (represented by
1147 NDVI) to rainfall variations during the period 1981-2000. These authors found significant
1148 relationships between the two variables. Rainfall data used were the CRU (New et al., 2000)
1149 and Climate Prediction Centre Merged Analysis of Precipitation (CMAP; Xie and Arkin,
1150 1997), both at coarse resolutions (0.5° and 2.5° , respectively). On a subcontinental scale, over
1151 southern Africa, Gondwe and Jury (1997) found significant relationships between rainfall and
1152 the NDVI during the period 1982-1993. Rainfall data used were from the CRU, at a coarse
1153 resolution of $2.5^\circ \times 3.7^\circ$ available then. Similarly, Richard and Pocard (1998) also found
1154 significant relationships between the two variables over southern Africa during a shorter
1155 period, i.e., 6 years (1983-1988).

1156
1157 Spatially more limited studies have also been conducted over southern Africa. Over
1158 Botswana, Nicholson and Farrar (1994) found significant NDVI-rainfall relationships during
1159 the period 1982-1987, with significant differences in these relationships for various soil types
1160 over the country. Farrar et al. (1994) extended that study by examining the extent to which
1161 differences in the rate of soil moisture generation (as a function of soil type or locality) can
1162 account for the NDVI-rainfall relationships, to find that they cannot. Over Namibia, in
1163 addition to NDVI-rainfall relationships, Wingate et al. (2019a) found significant NDVI trends
1164 over about 23% of the country, during the period 2001-2017. Over parts of South Africa,

1165 Richard et al. (2012) examined interannual memory effects on vegetation dynamics using
1166 NDVI and precipitation data, during the period 1981-1999. Memory effects refer to
1167 persistence effects in vegetation dynamics, and these memory effects can last for one year
1168 (Camberlin et al., 2007; Richard et al., 2012). Richard et al. (2012) concluded that of the 20-
1169 30% NDVI variance that is not explained by the concurrent rainfall, one third is explained by
1170 memory effects.

1171
1172 Examination of NDVI-rainfall relationships in the above-mentioned studies included
1173 computing linear correlations as well as the slope and intercept of the linear regression
1174 between the two variables. Those studies also considered possible lags between the two
1175 variables to account for the delayed adjustment of soil moisture content (Camberlin et al.,
1176 2007). For the linear regression, the slope can be considered as the response of vegetation
1177 activity per unit increase in rainfall, and the intercept as a descriptor of interannual variation
1178 in rain-use efficiency (Camberlin et al., 2007). Although the above-mentioned spatially more
1179 limited NDVI-rainfall studies over Botswana, Namibia and South Africa found significant
1180 relationships between the two variables, they did not cover the entire ORB region. For the
1181 studies over southern Africa and over the African continent, although they included the ORB
1182 region, for rainfall, they used coarser resolution datasets. In addition, the studies over
1183 southern Africa focused on shorter periods (12 years or shorter). Camberlin et al. (2007)
1184 suggested that to analyse relationships of NDVI with climatic variables, relatively long
1185 interannual time series are required. A global scale study (Yang et al., 2019) found NDVI to
1186 also correlate significantly with temperature over southern Africa. No studies were found that
1187 discuss relationships between the NDVI and temperature in the ORB region. There is a need
1188 to better understand relationships of climatic variables with NDVI over the ORB, as well as
1189 NDVI-climate mode relationships over this region, which have not been given much attention
1190 previously.

1191
1192 Having discussed studies that considered NDVI-rainfall relationships, the focus of the
1193 discussion is now switched to studies that examined climate-hydrological patterns. Murray-
1194 Hudson et al. (2006) used a mathematical model to assess impacts of changing hydrological
1195 inputs (e.g., local rainfall, extractions, river inflow) on flooding in the Delta. They found that
1196 changes resulting from existing climatic variability and possible effects of future climate
1197 change were larger than changes related to extractions or damming. Andersson et al. (2006)
1198 also found that simulations of increased water extractions for domestic use, livestock, and

1199 informal irrigation had very limited impact on modelled river discharge. Using outputs of
1200 three different global climate models to drive a suite of hydrological models, Wolski and
1201 Murray-Hudson (2008) found future conditions for the Delta to vary from much drier to
1202 much wetter than those recorded in the past. Hughes et al. (2011) assessed hydrological
1203 responses to scenarios of climate change in the ORB. Although these authors found a
1204 substantial change in mean flow associated with a global warming level of 2°C, they noted a
1205 considerable uncertainty in the sign and magnitude of the projected changes between
1206 different climate models.

1207

1208 Wolski and Murray-Hudson (2006a) found that water levels and river discharge in the Delta
1209 are influenced by a complex interplay of flood wave and local rainfall inputs. Jury (2010)
1210 found SST to show a warm-north/cool-south Atlantic dipole condition as the Okavango River
1211 rises. This SST dipole pattern is related to the Atlantic Meridional Mode (Chiang and
1212 Vimont, 2004; Amaya et al., 2016) discussed above. Jury (2010) also found a statistically
1213 significant relationship between the North Atlantic Oscillation (NAO) and river discharge.
1214 Wolski et al. (2012) found that multi-decadal wet and dry phases in the ORB result from
1215 multi-decadal oscillations in rainfall. All of these findings are important for water
1216 management in the ORB. However, very few of these studies have investigated potential
1217 influences of climate modes on river discharge, particularly ENSO which is known to be the
1218 main interannual climate mode affecting southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al.,
1219 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018; Hart et al., 2018).

1220

1221 **2.6 Summary**

1222

1223 Regional atmospheric circulation and weather systems influencing the weather and climate of
1224 the ORB and southern Africa as a whole, as well as factors contributing to variability have
1225 been reviewed in this chapter. The climate of the region is complex, responding to several
1226 factors that interact with each other, hence it is not well understood. The region experiences
1227 high climate variability both spatially and temporally, with climate extremes such as
1228 droughts, temperature extremes, and extreme rainfall events being common. However, not
1229 much attention has been paid to climate extremes over the ORB region. Climate variability
1230 impacts agricultural activities, vegetation and hydrological patterns in this region. However,
1231 relationships in the variability of climate, vegetation and hydrological patterns are not well
1232 understood over the ORB, as well as potential influences of climate modes. Warming and

1233 drying trends over southern Africa found by other studies provides a motivation to assess
1234 these trends over particular regions like the ORB.

1235

1236 This thesis attempts to make a key contribution to the body of knowledge about potential
1237 relationships between climate, NDVI and river discharge over the ORB region, as well as
1238 about climate extremes (droughts, temperature extremes, extreme rainfall events). It also
1239 attempts to better understand the potential links of these variables with climate modes such as
1240 ENSO and regional circulation systems such as the Botswana High over the ORB. In
1241 addition, the study considers whether any of the variables show significant trends over the
1242 ORB.

1243

1244 **Chapter 3: Data and Methods**

1245

1246 This chapter mainly provides a description of how the Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI)
1247 metric, introduced in the thesis, was derived. This metric has been used in **Chapter 6**.
1248 Various standard methods including time series analysis, linear correlations, composite
1249 analysis and trend analysis have also been used in each of the results chapters (**Chapters 4 to**
1250 **6**), and in **Chapter 4**, linear regressions also. Trends in the time series have been computed
1251 and tested for statistical significance at the 95% confidence level, using mainly the Hamed
1252 and Rao (1998) and Yue and Wang (2002) tests, both modified from the nonparametric
1253 Mann-Kendall test (MKT) (Mann, 1945; Kendall, 1975). The MKT is widely used because it
1254 is robust against outlier effects, and it does not make assumptions about the distribution of the
1255 data. However, unlike the modified trend tests used in the thesis, the original MKT does not
1256 take data autocorrelation into consideration. Possible relationships, for example, between
1257 climate extremes (droughts, hot days, extreme rainfall events) and climate modes such as
1258 ENSO and regional circulation systems such as the Botswana High have been investigated
1259 using the Pearson's product-moment correlations with significance reported at the 95% level.

1260

1261 Given the size of the domain, for climate influences on NDVI in **Chapter 4**, the study area
1262 has been divided into north (11° - 18.9° S, 13° - 31.5° E) and south (18.9° - 28° S, 13° - 31.5° E)
1263 zones based on the mean rainfall patterns. The dividing latitude between these north and
1264 south zones (high and low rainfall zones, respectively) is 18.9° S (hereafter, L18), which is
1265 discussed further in **Chapter 4**. In **Chapter 5**, because many rainfall events extend over a
1266 much larger region than the ORB, the analysis has been performed within a larger region than
1267 the ORB catchment area, referred to as the WCSA in **Chapters 1 and 5**. Detailed descriptions
1268 about how the study area has been divided, and about how various standard methods have
1269 been used as well as descriptions of datasets used are provided in each of the three results
1270 chapters (**Chapters 4 to 6**). A detailed description of the CDI metric is provided below.

1271

1272 *3.1 The CDI metric*

1273

1274 Drought tends to involve both a lack of rain as well as high temperatures, and it is the
1275 compounded effect of large anomalies in these variables which negatively impacts on
1276 agriculture, ecosystems and people, hence a Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric was

1277 derived. Such a metric then provides another measure of the relative severity of a particular
 1278 season (focusing on the months October-April) with anomalous dry conditions, analogous to
 1279 cumulative intensity often used to determine the severity of marine heat waves (Hobday et
 1280 al., 2016). The CDI metric was derived as shown in **Equations 3.1** to **3.4** below.

1281
 1282
$$CDI = n \times anomTmax \quad 3.1$$

1283
 1284
$$anomTmax = Tmax_{ds} - climTmax \quad 3.2$$

1285
 1286
$$Tmax_{ds} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Tmax_i \quad 3.3$$

1287
 1288
$$climTmax = \frac{1}{n \times m} \sum_{j=1}^m \sum_{i=1}^n Tmax_{ij} \quad 3.4$$

1289
 1290 This metric was computed by multiplying the maximum dry spell duration (n) in days, in a
 1291 particular season by the corresponding maximum temperature anomaly (anomTmax)
 1292 (**Equation 3.1**). Maximum dry spell duration is the largest number of consecutive days
 1293 receiving < 1 mm each in a particular season [based on the Expert Team on Climate Change
 1294 Detection and Indices (ETCCDI; Zhang et al., 2011; Sillmann et al., 2013)]. The temperature
 1295 anomaly is the maximum temperature averaged over the duration of the dry spell ($Tmax_{ds}$)
 1296 minus the climatological maximum temperature (climTmax) (**Equation 3.2**) for that time of
 1297 year. $Tmax_{ds}$ in **Equation 3.2** was computed using **Equation 3.3**, where $Tmax_i$ is the i^{th}
 1298 maximum temperature value over a particular dry spell event, and n is ≥ 3 , which means each
 1299 dry spell had to last at least 3 days. $climTmax$ in **Equation 3.2** was computed using
 1300 **Equation 3.4**, where the index (ij) in $Tmax_{ij}$ means the i^{th} maximum temperature value over
 1301 a particular dry spell event in a particular year j, and m = 41 (in years). This m in **Equation**
 1302 **3.4** is the length of the study period 1981-2021. Note that based on **Equation 3.1**, the CDI
 1303 metric has the units °C days.

1304
 1305 **3.2 Datasets**

1306
 1307 **3.2.1 CHIRPS**

1308

1309 Due to lack of high-resolution in-situ rainfall stations in the ORB region, the Climate Hazards
1310 Group Infrared Precipitation with Station data (CHIRPS; Funk et al., 2015) version 2, were
1311 used in the thesis. CHIRPS data have high spatial (0.05°) and temporal (daily) resolutions
1312 and are available from 1981 to near real time. These data were used to compute the CDI
1313 metric in **Chapter 6** and to identify dry spells and monthly evolution of the tropical rain-belt
1314 in the same chapter. They were also used to identify extreme rainfall events in **Chapter 5** and
1315 to examine mean rainfall patterns in **Chapter 4**.

1316

1317 CHIRPS data have been used successfully in southern Africa by past studies, who found
1318 them to agree well with rain gauge data (e.g., Rapolaki et al., 2019; Mahlalela et al., 2020;
1319 Thoithi et al., 2021). In this thesis, over the ORB region, CHIRPS data were found to perform
1320 reasonably well when compared with station data available in northern Botswana and
1321 Namibia, provided by national meteorological services of these two countries, with some
1322 station data provided by the Southern African Science Service Centre for Climate Change
1323 and Adaptive Land Management (SASCCAL). Only stations (shown in **Figure 1.1**) with
1324 sufficient quality data were used in the validation of CHIRPS in the thesis. As an additional
1325 check, rainfall characteristics over the study area were compared with the Tropical Rainfall
1326 Measuring Mission (TRMM; Huffman et al., 2007) and Precipitation Estimation from
1327 Remotely Sensed Information using Artificial Neural Networks-Climate Data Record
1328 (PERSIANN-CDR; Nguyen et al., 2019) datasets, both at a coarser resolution of 0.25° , to
1329 find very similar results to those for CHIRPS.

1330

1331 *3.2.2 ERA5 reanalyses*

1332

1333 Two-meter air temperature from ERA5 reanalyses at a resolution of 0.25° (Copernicus
1334 Climate Change Service, 2017; Hersbach et al., 2020) were used together with CHIRPS data
1335 to compute the CDI metric in **Chapter 6**. Note that the ERA5 temperature resolution was
1336 deemed sufficient since the dataset showed little spatial variation in temperature within small
1337 boxes with sides of lengths 28 km ($\sim 0.25^\circ$) by 28 km. The ERA5 temperature data also
1338 compared well (not shown) with other datasets such as the few available stations (Shakawe
1339 and Maun shown in **Figure 1.1a**, data provided by the Botswana Meteorological Services)
1340 with quality data. In addition, the 2m air temperature data from ERA5 were also used to
1341 identify hot days in **Chapter 6**, defined as the number of days with a maximum temperature
1342 greater than the 90th percentile per season, over the observational record. A percentile-based

1343 method was used to derive hot days based on the Expert Team on Climate Change Detection
1344 and Indices (ETCCDI; Zhang et al., 2011; Sillmann et al., 2013) and on other pertinent
1345 studies (e.g., Lyon, 2009; Mueller and Seneviratne, 2012).

1346

1347 ERA5 reanalyses were also used for other purposes, including the following. They were used
1348 to identify the dominant weather systems associated with extreme rainfall events in **Chapter**
1349 **5** as explained in detail there. ERA5 reanalyses fields including specific humidity, omega,
1350 winds, 500 hPa and 850 hPa geopotential heights, along with National Oceanic and
1351 Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Optimally Interpolated SST data (0.25° resolution)
1352 (Huang et al., 2021), were used to analyse circulation patterns in **Chapters 5** and **6**.
1353 Reanalysis data from the National Centres for Environmental Prediction-Department of
1354 Energy (NCEP/DOE2) at 2.5° resolution (Kalnay et al., 1996; Kanamitsu et al., 2002) were
1355 also used to analyse circulation patterns. Previous studies found NCEP/DOE2 reanalyses to
1356 perform reasonably well over southern Africa (e.g., Zhang et al., 2013; Moalafhi et al., 2016).
1357 Consistent with those studies, in this thesis, ERA5 and NCEP/DOE2 reanalyses gave very
1358 similar results on circulation patterns in **Chapters 5** and **6**, hence only ERA5 circulation
1359 results are reported in these chapters. When the work was done in **Chapter 4**, there were not
1360 adequate computing facilities to download and process the higher resolution ERA5 data,
1361 hence NCEP/DOE2 reanalyses were used.

1362

1363 3.2.3 NDVI

1364

1365 NDVI data provided by the third generation Global Inventory Monitoring and Modelling
1366 System (GIMMS; Tucker et al., 1991; Tucker et al., 2005) were used to assess photosynthetic
1367 vegetation activity (greenness or brownness) in **Chapter 4**, and to assess NDVI trends in the
1368 case study conducted in **Chapter 6**. This data is defined as the difference between near-
1369 infrared and red reflectance divided by their sum (Curran, 1983). It has a bi-monthly temporal
1370 and 1/12° spatial resolution, and it is available over the period of 1982-20215 (years with full
1371 data coverage). Its high spatial resolution makes it suitable in this thesis. NDVI data accounts
1372 for different undesired effects such as calibration loss. It has been extensively used to study
1373 regional and global land vegetation processes (e.g., Nicholson and Farrar, 1994; Richard and
1374 Pocard, 1998; Camberlin et al., 2007; Martiny et al., 2010; Richard et al., 2012; Pinzon and
1375 Tucker, 2014; Chu et al., 2019; Luo et al., 2020). Other similar products such as the Moderate
1376 Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer (MODIS)-NDVI, i.e., MODIS-NDVI, were

1377 considered in the thesis. MODIS-NDVI is only available from the year 2000, hence it could
1378 not be used due to its shorter temporal time scale. Note that NDVI data provided by GIMMs
1379 and MODIS-NDVI were very similar (not shown) during the recent period after 2000. The
1380 compositing process of this dataset is provided in the National Aeronautics and Space
1381 Administration (NASA)'s MODIS web site (MODIS, 1999).

1382

1383 As mentioned above, detailed descriptions on how various standard methods were used as
1384 well as descriptions of datasets used, including those not highlighted in the present chapter,
1385 are provided in **Chapters 4 to 6**, presented next. Website links for data download are given in
1386 the acknowledgments.

1387

1388 **Chapter 4: Relationships between NDVI, river discharge and climate in the**
1389 **Okavango River Basin region**

1390

1391 **This chapter is presented as the paper published in International Journal of**
1392 **Climatology. It addresses the questions below:**

1393

1394 *Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Relationships between NDVI, river discharge*
1395 *and climate in the Okavango River Basin region. International Journal of Climatology 42(2),*
1396 *691-713.*

1397

- 1398 ▪ How are the NDVI and river discharge influenced by rainfall and temperature
1399 variability in the ORB region?
- 1400 ▪ Are relationships between the NDVI and rainfall/temperature in the high rainfall
1401 zone statistically different from those on the low rainfall zone?
- 1402 ▪ Do large-scale climate modes, such as ENSO, impact strongly on NDVI, river
1403 discharge, temperature and rainfall in the ORB region?

1404

1405 **Abstract**

1406 The Okavango River Basin (ORB) is a highly sensitive and biodiverse region in southern
1407 Africa where climate, vegetation and river discharge characteristics are not well understood.
1408 This study investigated relationships between rainfall, temperature, Normalized Difference
1409 Vegetation Index (NDVI) and river discharge over the region as well as their trends and
1410 interannual variability. It is found that spatial patterns of NDVI are closely related to those of
1411 rainfall, but less so with temperature at monthly and seasonal time scales. The relationships
1412 between the NDVI and rainfall/temperature differ north of 18.9°S where rainfall is higher
1413 than to its south. Typically, there are lags of 1-2-months between NDVI and rainfall. Also,
1414 there are large areas across the region that show significant warming trends in all seasons as
1415 well as wetting (mainly in the north). This increasing trend in surface temperature may act to
1416 worsen the impacts of extreme events such as severe drought and fire in the region. There is
1417 also pronounced interannual variability of rainfall, temperature and NDVI, with significant
1418 correlations found with El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO), the subtropical Indian Ocean
1419 Dipole (SIOD) and the Botswana High for rainfall and temperature, and for NDVI with
1420 ENSO. The correlations for rainfall (temperature) with ENSO and the Botswana were
1421 negative (positive), with the SIOD they were positive (negative), and the NDVI-ENSO
1422 correlations were negative. For the Southern Annular Mode, significant correlations were
1423 found with rainfall (positive) and temperature (negative) only in December and April. On
1424 longer time scales, focus was also placed on the wet 2006-2013 period relative to much drier
1425 1999-2005 epoch for October-December. The wetter conditions during 2006-2013 appear
1426 related to La Niña Modoki conditions and warmer sea surface temperature near Angola as
1427 well as regional circulation differences.

1428

1429 **4.1 Introduction**

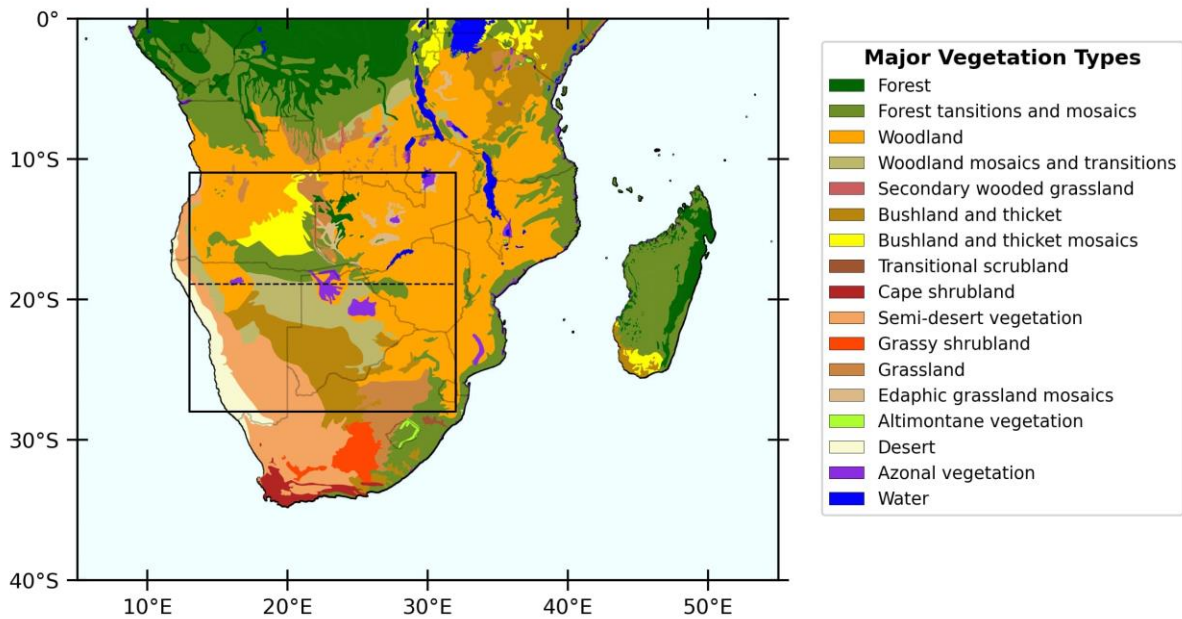
1430

1431 Like most of southern Africa, the Okavango River Basin (ORB; **Figure 1.1**) and the
1432 adjoining areas are affected by climate variability which is likely to be aggravated by
1433 anthropogenic climate change (Andersson et al., 2003; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008).
1434 Climate variability impacts are reflected in, for example, changes in hydrological conditions
1435 which impact vegetation distribution (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). Different vegetation
1436 types are present (**Figure 4.1**) and are summarized here based on Smith (1976), White
1437 (1984), SMEC (1986), Ellery et al. (2003), Murray-Hudson et al. (2006), Revermann et al.
1438 (2016) and Bouvet et al. (2018). In the Angolan Central Plateau, Miombo forests are
1439 predominant, with geoxylic grasslands being prominent in the mid and bottom slopes of the
1440 valleys. In the Angola/Namibia border area, the Miombo woodlands are less widespread than
1441 the more open *Baikiaea-Burkea* woodlands. Shrubs and grasslands are also prominent in this
1442 area stretching south of 18.9°S where the proportion of woody species decreases due to a
1443 drier climate. In the Okavango Delta, channel fringe and floodplain vegetation are dominated
1444 by emergent graminoid macrophytes (sedges and grasses) which have varying tolerance for
1445 flooding, depending on whether they are seasonal swamp or perennial swamp communities.

1446

1447 Farmers use seasonal swamp floodplains in the outskirts of the Delta for flood recession
1448 farming, with maize being one of the commonly produced crops. It is thought that vegetation
1449 patterns reflect those in rainfall and the prevalent hydrological conditions (Murray-Hudson et
1450 al., 2006; Revermann et al., 2016). However, there is limited amount of knowledge about
1451 whether climate influences on vegetation in the higher rainfall regions in the north of the
1452 ORB are different from those in the drier regions in the south. Vegetation is sensitive to
1453 severe drought or floods, resulting from the impacts of ENSO for example, and can be
1454 compounded by climate change. Such change together with human activity such as clearing
1455 of vegetation for farming or settlement has implications for wildlife distribution and tourism,
1456 which is a major contributor to the Botswana economy. The Okavango Delta, which is a
1457 world heritage and Ramsar site, has extremely high biodiversity supporting economically
1458 vital ecotourism (Mbaiwa, 2004, 2015). Climate variability and change also impact water
1459 security and flood recession farming on the outskirts of the Delta (Murray-Hudson et al.,
1460 2006; Mbaiwa, 2015; Moses and Hambira, 2018).

1461



1462

1463 **Figure 4.1** The spatial distribution of the main vegetation classes in southern Africa (source:
 1464 UNESCO/AETFAT/UNSO and White, 1984). The black square depicts the study area, while
 1465 the dotted line is the location of the L18 described in the text. The *Azonal vegetation* class
 1466 consists mostly of herbaceous swamp and aquatic vegetation in the Delta, as well as
 1467 halophytic vegetation which occurs in the salt pans to the west (northern Namibia) and
 1468 southeast of the Delta.

1469

1470 Rainfall in the ORB region is highly variable, occurring mainly during October to March,
 1471 although April can also sometimes receive considerable rainfall. Totals range from about
 1472 1000 mm/year in the Angolan Highlands (high rainfall zone where most of the streamflow is
 1473 generated) to about 450 mm/year in the Delta (low rainfall zone). Temperatures are generally
 1474 high particularly over Botswana where daily maximums can exceed 42°C (Moses and
 1475 Gondwe, 2019). Such extreme temperatures may exacerbate the impacts of severe drought,
 1476 heat waves and fire in the region (Barros and Field, 2014; Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et
 1477 al., 2018). Both rainfall and temperature over the ORB are influenced in summer by the near-
 1478 surface Angola Low (Mulenga et al., 2003; Cook et al., 2004; Crétat et al., 2018) and the
 1479 Botswana High. The latter is a midlevel feature whose weakening (strengthening) typically
 1480 enhances (suppresses) rainfall (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). A deeper Angola
 1481 Low is associated with more tropical convection and hence more tropical-extratropical cloud
 1482 bands (or tropical-temperate troughs). These cloud bands typically extend from southern
 1483 Angola diagonally in a southeastwards direction to the southwest Indian Ocean and are the
 1484 most important rain-producing synoptic system over subtropical southern Africa (Hart et al.,

1485 2013). The Angola Low, which is typically a heat low in early summer and a tropical low in
1486 late summer (Munday and Washington, 2017), together with orographic uplift, are the main
1487 contributors to high rainfall in the Angolan Highlands. Moisture feeds into the Angola Low
1488 region from both the western tropical Indian Ocean and the tropical southeast Atlantic
1489 (Rouault et al., 2003a; Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006; Vigaud et al., 2009; Manhique
1490 et al., 2015; Reason and Smart, 2015) with the Congo Basin also sometimes making
1491 important contributions (Rapolaki et al., 2019, 2020).

1492

1493 Climate variability in the ORB and more generally, southern Africa, may be related to sea
1494 surface temperature (SST) anomalies in the neighbouring oceans or the tropical Pacific. The
1495 El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) is the main interannual climate mode affecting
1496 southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005;
1497 Blamey et al., 2018; Crétat et al., 2018), but its impacts may differ across the region.
1498 Typically, El Niño (La Niña) events are associated with droughts (floods) over large parts of
1499 southern Africa, but this is not always the case such as during the 1997/1998 and 2009/2010
1500 El Niño austral summers (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Driver et
1501 al., 2019). Other climate modes which may affect the region on interannual scales include the
1502 subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD; Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Reason, 2001a, 2002),
1503 the Southern Annular Mode (SAM; Gillett et al., 2006) and the Benguela Niño (Rouault et
1504 al., 2003a; Hansingo and Reason, 2009). However, the latter mode was found not to correlate
1505 significantly with rainfall, Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) or river
1506 discharge (correlations = 0.17, 0.19 and 0.03, respectively, $p > 0.05$ in all cases) in the ORB
1507 during January-April, and hence is not considered further. Drier (wetter) than average
1508 summers over some parts of southern Africa are expected during negative (positive) SIOD
1509 events. For the SAM, Gillett et al. (2006) found a positive relationship with summer rainfall
1510 over some parts of southern Africa while Reason and Rouault (2005) found a negative
1511 relationship over western South Africa with winter rainfall. Quasi-decadal to decadal wet and
1512 dry spells are a well-known aspect of subtropical southern Africa climate (e.g., Tyson et al.,
1513 1975; Tyson, 1986; Wolski et al., 2012; Malherbe et al., 2014; Reason, 2016) and may be
1514 linked to decadal-scale variability in ENSO and SAM impacts (Reason and Rouault, 2002,
1515 2005; Allan et al., 2003).

1516

1517 Although climate influences on vegetation in southern Africa have been considered (e.g.,
1518 Farrar et al., 1994; Nicholson and Farrar, 1994; Richard and Pocard, 1998; Wingate et al.,

1519 2019a) very few studies (except Richard and Pocard, 1998) cover the entire ORB and its
1520 adjoining areas or the potential influences of climate modes on vegetation. While numerous
1521 studies considered the hydrology of the basin (Andersson et al., 2003; McCarthy et al., 2003;
1522 Gumbrecht et al., 2004; Andersson et al., 2006; Wilk et al., 2006; Murray-Hudson et al.,
1523 2006; Wolski et al., 2006; Jury, 2010; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2006b, 2008; Hughes et
1524 al., 2011; Wolski et al., 2012; Wolski et al., 2014), very few have investigated potential
1525 influences of climate modes on river discharge. Most of those studies found that climate
1526 variability is pronounced over the basin, and some like Murray-Hudson et al. (2006) and
1527 Hughes et al. (2011), found that upstream development related changes are relatively small
1528 compared to changes resulting from climatic factors.

1529
1530 A better understanding of rainfall variability over the basin and its links with river discharge
1531 and vegetation is needed for appropriate management of the water resources and ecosystems
1532 of the biodiverse and unique ORB region as well as for assessing how the region may
1533 respond to a globally warming climate. Specifically, the following three questions are posed:
1534 (a) How are the NDVI (representing photosynthetic activity of vegetation) and river
1535 discharge influenced by rainfall and temperature variability in the ORB region? (b) Are
1536 relationships between the NDVI and rainfall/temperature in the high rainfall zone statistically
1537 different from those on the low rainfall zone? (c) Do large-scale climate modes, such as
1538 ENSO and SIOD, impact strongly on NDVI, river discharge, temperature and rainfall in the
1539 ORB region?

1540

1541 **4.2 Data and Methods**

1542

1543 **Figure 1.1** shows the study area, the ORB region (11°-28°S, 13°-31.5°E), as well as its
1544 surface elevation. Over Botswana, the land surface is relatively flat, with an elevation that
1545 ranges from about 700 to 1300 m above sea level. **Figure 1.1b** shows the two main rivers, the
1546 Cubango and Cuito, which originate from the southern Angolan Highlands and merge in
1547 southeastern Angola to form the Okavango River which then feeds into the Okavango Delta
1548 in northwestern Botswana. The location of the Mohembo hydrological station, which
1549 measures the Okavango River discharge into the Delta, is also shown. Discharge data from
1550 this station, available from 1934 to near present, were provided by the University of
1551 Botswana. The Delta lies more than 600 km away from the Okavango River headwaters;
1552 hence there is a substantial time lag between rainfall received upstream over southern

1553 Angola, and water levels in the Delta apex. This time lag is approximately two months
1554 (Andersson et al., 2003).

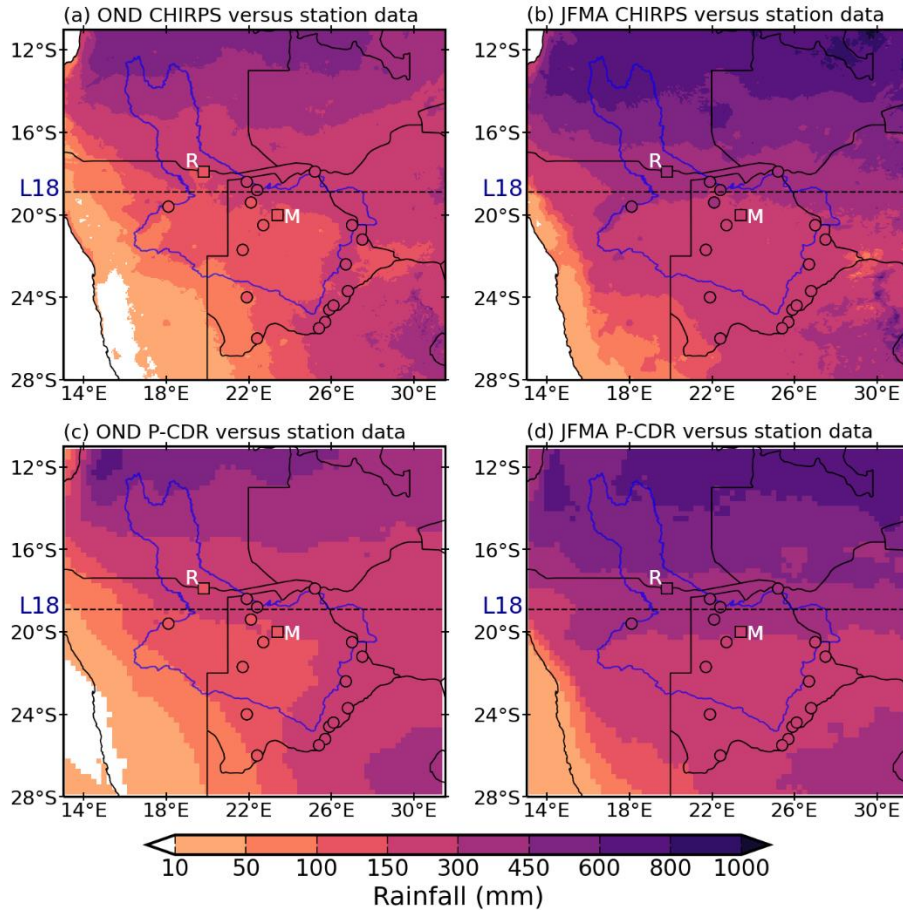
1555

1556 Given the size of the domain, for climate influences on NDVI or vegetation (vegetation types
1557 described earlier), the study area has been divided into north (11° - 18.9° S, 13° - 31.5° E) and
1558 south (18.9° - 28° S, 13° - 31.5° E) zones based on the mean rainfall maps (**Figure 4.2**). Based
1559 on the said rainfall maps, the dividing latitude between these high (north) and low rainfall
1560 (south) zones is 18.9° S, denoted by “L18.” To consider climate influences on river discharge,
1561 a “Cor_Box” is used which is defined as 11.7° - 18.9° S, 14.8° - 23° E (to represent the northern
1562 part of the catchment, found to give better correlations than a larger region by trial and error;
1563 **Figure 1.1b**).

1564

1565 Since the ORB has few in-situ rainfall stations particularly in Angola where most of the
1566 streamflow is generated, Climate Hazards Group Infrared Precipitation with Station data
1567 (CHIRPS) version 2 data were used. CHIRPS data has high spatial (0.05°) and temporal
1568 (daily) resolution and is available from 1981 to near real time (Funk et al., 2015). The
1569 CHIRPS rainfall estimate is derived from merging rain gauges with satellite data. Previous
1570 studies have found CHIRPS data to agree well with rain gauge data for stations in the Eastern
1571 Cape, South Africa (Mahlalela et al., 2020) as well as those near the South African/eastern
1572 Botswana border (Thoithi et al., 2021). Over the study area, CHIRPS was validated using
1573 rainfall observations obtained from national meteorological services and from the Southern
1574 African Science Service Centre for Climate Change and Adaptive Land Management
1575 (SASCCAL). For the ORB, only stations in parts of Botswana and Namibia had sufficient
1576 quality data during the 1981-2019 period (**Figure 1.1a**). CHIRPS data were also compared
1577 with the Precipitation Estimation from Remotely Sensed Information using Artificial Neural
1578 Networks-Climate Data Record (PERSIANN-CDR), which is available daily from 1983 to
1579 near-present at a spatial resolution of 0.25° (Nguyen et al., 2019). The common time span of
1580 station and PERSIANN-CDR data overlap was 1983-2012, hence this period was selected for
1581 comparison with CHIRPS data.

1582



1583

1584 **Figure 4.2** (a) and (b) show CHIRPS mean rainfall versus station data (denoted by circles
 1585 and squares, with station data plotted in them) for OND and JFMA, respectively, over the
 1586 ORB region (1983-2012). The location of the two stations used for the comparison in Figure
 1587 4.3 are denoted by a square symbol (“R” and “M” in the square symbol denote Rundu and
 1588 Maun, respectively). (c) and (d) are as in (a) and (b) but for PERSIANN-CDR (P-CDR). The
 1589 blue polygon is the outline of the Okavango River catchment. “L18” is the 18.9°S latitude
 1590 dividing the study area into high and low rainfall zones.

1591

1592 For temperature analysis, gridded 2m air temperature of the combined Global Historical
 1593 Climatology Network (GHCN) and Climate Anomaly Monitoring System (CAMS) for the
 1594 period 1982-2015 was used (Fan and Van den Dool, 2008). This 0.5° spatial resolution
 1595 temperature dataset is regularly updated with available station observations. NDVI data
 1596 provided by the third generation Global Inventory Monitoring and Modelling System
 1597 (GIMMS; Tucker et al., 1991; Tucker et al., 2005) was used to assess photosynthetic activity
 1598 of vegetation (greenness or brownness). This bi-monthly temporal and 1/12° spatial
 1599 resolution NDVI dataset accounts for various undesired effects including calibration loss. It

1600 has been widely used to study regional and global land vegetation processes (e.g., Pinzon and
1601 Tucker, 2014; Luo et al., 2020). For the analysis, only years with full data coverage (1982-
1602 2015) were considered. It is important to note that the rainfall and temperature datasets
1603 described above were linearly re-gridded to the same resolution of $1/12^\circ$ as the NDVI dataset.

1604

1605 Long-term means (1982-2015) of NDVI, river discharge, temperature and rainfall were
1606 computed for the different seasons of October-December (OND; early summer), January-
1607 April (JFMA; late summer) and May-September (MJJAS; winter). December-March (DJFM)
1608 was also considered. Note that the vegetation growing period in the ORB is from November
1609 to May (Revermann et al., 2016). Trends in the time series of each variable were analysed
1610 and tested at a significance level (α) = 0.05 using the nonparametric Mann-Kendall test (MK;
1611 Luo et al., 2020). Before applying the MK test, three methods were used (for comparison) to
1612 remove the trend and pre-whiten the time series (to minimize the influence of autocorrelation
1613 on the MK test), namely, the Hamed and Rao (1998) test (MMKHR), the Yue and Wang
1614 (2002) pre-whitening test (MMKYW) and the Yue et al. (2002) test (MMKYPPC). Unlike
1615 the original MK test, the three modified MK tests take into consideration data
1616 autocorrelation.

1617

1618 Circulation patterns were investigated using reanalysis data (including precipitable water,
1619 geopotential height, and zonal, meridional and vertical winds at 850 and 500 hPa levels) from
1620 the National Centres for Environmental Prediction (NCEP/DOE2; Kalnay et al., 1996;
1621 Kanamitsu et al., 2002), together with outgoing longwave radiation (OLR). The NCEP/DOE2
1622 data has a spatial resolution of 2.5° and available from 1979 to 2020. Correlations of some of
1623 the main climate modes, including ENSO, SIOD and SAM, versus NDVI, river discharge,
1624 rainfall and temperature were computed. For ENSO, the Niño 3.4 index was used which is
1625 defined as the monthly average of the SST anomalies in the Central Pacific (5°N - 5°S ; 120° -
1626 170°W). Data for this index was obtained from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric
1627 Administration (NOAA)'s Climate Prediction Centre (Huang et al., 2017). NOAA Optimally
1628 Interpolated SST (Huang et al., 2021) was used to compute the SIOD index, defined as the
1629 normalized difference in SST anomalies averaged over the western (37° - 27°S , 55° - 65°E) and
1630 eastern (28° - 18°S , 90° - 100°E) poles in the southern Indian Ocean (Behera and Yamagata,
1631 2001). For the SAM, the Marshall (2003) index is used, which is based on the zonal pressure
1632 difference between 40°S and 65°S . Correlations of NDVI, river discharge, rainfall and
1633 temperature with indices of the Angola Low and the Botswana High were also performed.

1634 The Angola Low index was computed as the 850 hPa geopotential height averaged over 16°-
1635 20°S, 18°-22°E (based on Munday and Washington, 2017) and the Botswana High index was
1636 computed as the 500 hPa geopotential height averaged over 19°-23°S, 16°-21°E (based on
1637 Driver and Reason, 2017) using the NCEP/DOE2 reanalysis data.

1638

1639 Monthly and seasonal lag correlations (detrended) of NDVI and river discharge with
1640 rainfall/temperature, and with the indices described above were computed at time lags of 0-2
1641 months or seasons using the Pearson correlation method and tested for significance at $\alpha =$
1642 0.05. For NDVI correlations with rainfall/temperature over north and south of L18, time
1643 series of these variables for each region were generated by spatially averaging their datasets
1644 accordingly over those regions, and similarly for river discharge versus rainfall/temperature
1645 correlations over the Cor_Box. Information on the websites for data download is given in the
1646 acknowledgments.

1647

1648 **4.3 Results and Discussion**

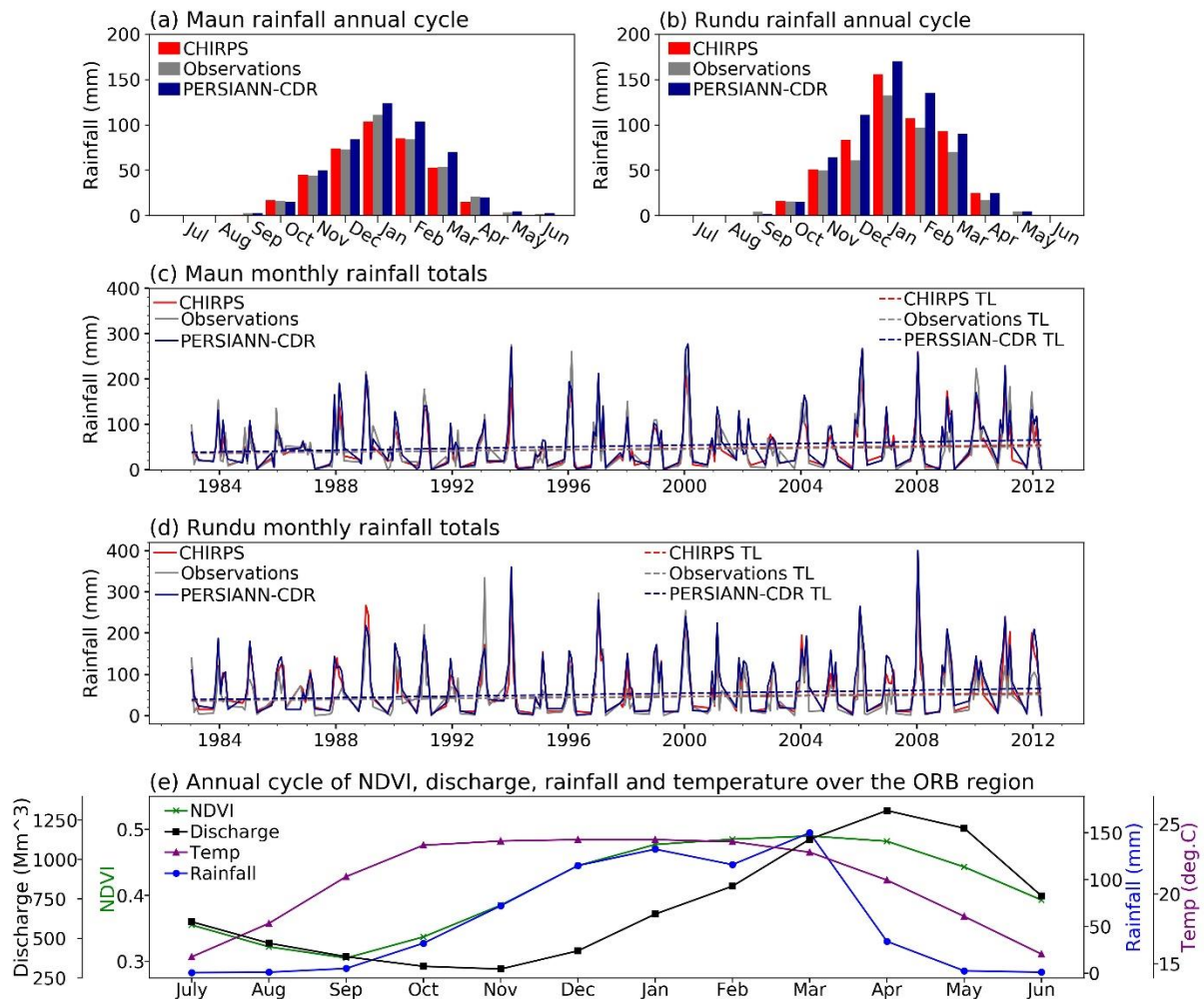
1649

1650 *4.3.1 Seasonality*

1651

1652 **Figure 4.2** plots early and late summer mean CHIRPS and PERSIANN-CDR rainfall over
1653 the region together with the available 19 in-situ stations shown in **Figure 1.1a**. The datasets
1654 are consistent in their mean rainfall distribution both within and outside the ORB. In general,
1655 the rainfall totals are greater during the late summer than the early summer. Furthermore, the
1656 annual cycle of rainfall for all the stations were compared with those from the nearest grid-
1657 points in CHIRPS and PERSIANN-CDR. The results were similar for all the stations, but for
1658 convenience, only those for Maun and Rundu (south and north of L18, respectively) are
1659 shown (**Figure 4.3**). A very dry May-September is followed by a steady increase in rainfall
1660 through early summer to January, the wettest month on average, and then a sharp decrease
1661 through the rest of the summer. While all three datasets show the same annual cycle, there are
1662 some differences in magnitude. PERSIANN-CDR consistently overestimates the mean values
1663 relative to CHIRPS and the station data, with the latter two datasets agreeing more closely
1664 with each other at Maun than at Rundu. Overestimation of rainfall by the PERSIANN-CDR
1665 could be related to its lower resolution or its data processing procedure. In terms of
1666 interannual variability, **Figures 4.3c,d** show that the datasets agree on anomalous wet and dry
1667 years, but that PERSIANN-CDR again tends to give larger values than either CHIRPS or

1668 station data. The datasets are also consistent in each showing a slightly increasing trend, but
 1669 these are not statistically significant using the MMKHR, MMKYW and MMKYPPC tests.
 1670 Based on **Figures 4.2** and **4.3a-d**, CHIRPS has been used as the main rainfall dataset in the
 1671 study.
 1672



1673
 1674 **Figure 4.3** (a) monthly mean rainfall in CHIRPS, PERSIANN-CDR and Maun station
 1675 (station 6 in Figure 1.1) data for the period 1983-2012. (b) as in (a) but for the Rundu station
 1676 (station 2 in Figure 1.1). (c) CHIRPS versus observed and PERSIANN-CDR monthly rainfall
 1677 for Maun. (d) is as in (c) but for Rundu, with “TL” denoting trend line. None of the trends
 1678 were statistically significant at $\alpha = 0.05$. (e) Monthly mean NDVI, temperature and rainfall
 1679 spatially averaged over the ORB region (11° - 28° S, 13° - 31.5° E), and of river discharge at
 1680 Mhembo (1982-2015).

1681
 1682 **Figure 4.4** shows that mean NDVI and rainfall distributions are closely linked for the early
 1683 and late summer but less so during the very dry MJJAS months. Overall, throughout the year,

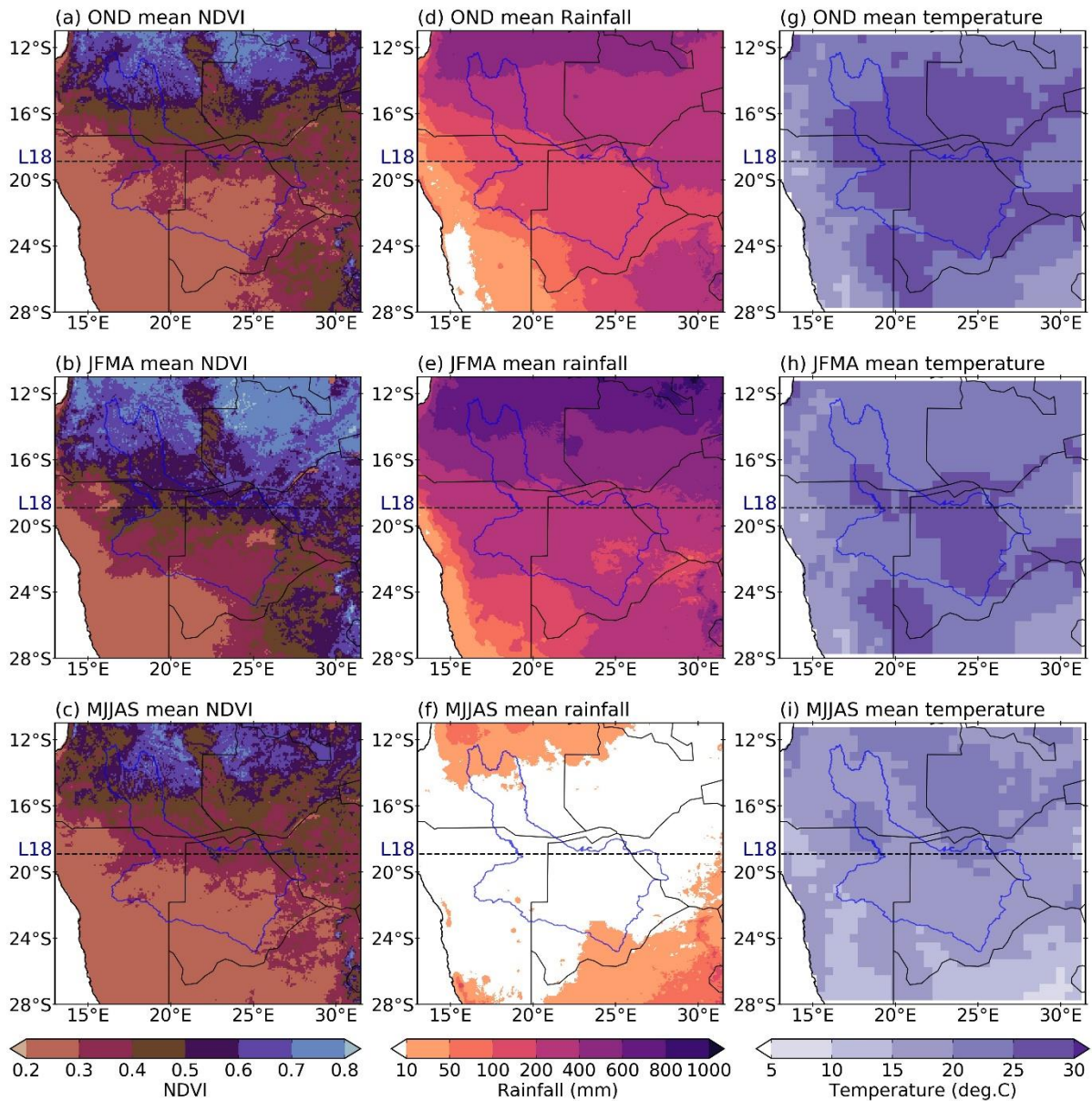
1684 the wetter area north of L18 has higher NDVI values (greener vegetation) than the drier area
1685 south of L18. This area has a greater proportion of thicker woodland than that south of L18
1686 where there is more grassland. Although MJJAS is very dry compared to the other months, its
1687 NDVI pattern within the ORB is like that of OND, suggesting that it responds to rainfall of
1688 the previous summer. For temperature, the largest area of high values (mean > 25°C) occurs
1689 during OND (**Figures 4.4g-i**) and there is no obvious relationship between these patterns and
1690 NDVI. However, since previous studies indicate that variability of vegetation over southern
1691 Africa is mainly due to rainfall of the current wet season (Camberlin et al., 2007; Richard et
1692 al., 2008, 2012; Martiny et al., 2010; Good and Caylor, 2011), partial correlation analysis was
1693 performed to remove the effects of rainfall on NDVI and test for any possible temperature-
1694 NDVI relationship. Spatially averaged over the region, the NDVI correlations with
1695 temperature were -0.34, -0.41 and -0.50 for OND, JFMA and MJJAS, respectively, whereas
1696 after the effects of rainfall are removed, the resulting partial correlations of NDVI with
1697 temperature were -0.34, -0.12 and -0.53. Thus, only in JFMA is there any difference implying
1698 that the temperature-NDVI relationship is partly explained by rainfall influences in this
1699 season only. Partial correlations for data averaged over the area north (south) of L18 were
1700 stronger (weaker) than those for the ORB region, but differences in these partial correlations
1701 were small, so the fact that they were stronger in the area north of L18 is not surprising. In
1702 both cases, the correlation results as well as spatial patterns (**Figure 4.4**) using DJFM are
1703 very similar to JFMA.

1704

1705 Spatially averaged over the ORB region, **Figure 4.3e** shows that NDVI reaches its maximum
1706 in March and April before sharply dropping in May and June to a minimum in September,
1707 while rainfall drops sharply from March (maximum) to April and then to virtually no rain
1708 from May to September. Thus, a 1-2-month lag between rainfall and NDVI may exist from
1709 April until September after which the two variables appear in phase until at least January. The
1710 annual cycle of temperature shows near-constant warm temperatures during the summer half
1711 of the year and sharp changes either side of the broad peak to the cool mid-winter months of
1712 June and July. For river discharge at Mohembo, with a minimum in November and a peak in
1713 April, **Figure 4.3e** suggests a 1-2-month lag with monthly rainfall in late summer but a
1714 longer lag in early summer. On a seasonal basis, highest discharge occurs in JFMA with
1715 mean and standard deviation of 3920 Mm³ ("M" denotes mega) and 1190 Mm³, respectively,
1716 followed by MJJAS with a mean and standard deviation of 3430 and 840 Mm³, respectively,

1717 whereas lowest discharge occurs in OND with a mean and standard deviation of 1050 and
 1718 210 Mm³, respectively.

1719



1720

1721 **Figure 4.4** Long-term mean (1982-2015) NDVI, temperature and rainfall over the ORB
 1722 region. (a)-(c) show NDVI over OND, JFMA and MJJAS, respectively. (d)-(f) are as in (a)-
 1723 (c) but for rainfall. (g)-(i) are as in (a)-(c) but for temperature. The blue polygon is the outline
 1724 of the Okavango River catchment. “L18” is the 18.9°S latitude dividing the study area into
 1725 high and low rainfall zones.

1726

1727 *4.3.2 Lag correlations*

1728

1729 **Table 4.1** shows monthly lag correlations between NDVI and rainfall over the ORB region,
1730 and north and south of L18 for December to April (October and November are not shown as
1731 the correlations are weak). At 1-month lag, over the ORB, there are significant correlations
1732 for each month (highest $r = 0.83$ in April) except January which shows a weaker but still
1733 significant zero lag correlation. March and April also show strong 2-month lag correlations.
1734 South of L18, the 1-2-month lag correlations are generally stronger than those computed for
1735 the area north of L18, which suggests that rainfall is more important to grassy species which
1736 are more dominant in the former region than in the latter region (e.g., Smith, 1976; Murray-
1737 Hudson et al., 2006; Bouvet et al., 2018).

1738

1739 This 1-2-month lag of the NDVI response to rainfall over each region is consistent with the
1740 results of Nicholson and Farrar et al. (1994) obtained over Botswana. For temperature, **Table**
1741 **4.1** shows that the area south of L18 typically has stronger lag correlations with NDVI than
1742 does the whole ORB region and there are no significant correlations for the area north of L18
1743 except in April. As the rainy season comes to an end in April, vegetation over the ORB may
1744 start to become more sensitive to temperature as suggested by their in-phase cycle during
1745 April-June (**Figure 4.3e**).

1746

1747 **Table 4.1** also shows seasonal correlations of NDVI with rainfall and temperature. At zero
1748 lag, the only significant NDVI-rainfall correlations are those for JFMA over the ORB and
1749 more strongly for the area south of L18. The high correlations of MJJAS NDVI at 1-season
1750 lag suggest that JFMA rainfall strongly influences winter vegetation. There is also a
1751 significant but weaker 1-season lag correlation between OND rainfall and JFMA NDVI but
1752 only for the area north of L18. For temperature, the stronger 1-month lag than zero lag NDVI
1753 correlations in MJJAS are consistent with the annual cycle in **Figure 4.3e** which shows
1754 temperature starting to fall in March whereas NDVI only starts decreasing in April and then
1755 more obviously in May.

1756

1757 **Table 4.1** Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of NDVI with rainfall (RN) and
 1758 temperature (TE) over the ORB region (upper panel) (1982-2015). Lower panel is as in the
 1759 upper panel but for seasonal lag (0-1) correlations. Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$
 1760 are shown

		Monthly correlations								
		ORB			North of L18			South of L18		
		0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1	2
Dec	RN		0.76			0.59			0.69	
	TE									
Jan	RN	0.43						0.53		
	TE	-0.56		-0.42				-0.75		-0.45
Feb	RN		0.77			0.48	0.37	0.43	0.78	
	TE	-0.54	-0.66					-0.71	-0.74	
Mar	RN	0.47	0.62	0.76			0.35	0.46	0.81	0.78
	TE	-0.64	-0.71	-0.65				-0.74	-0.81	-0.69
Apr	RN		0.83	0.63		0.40			0.80	0.65
	TE	-0.77	-0.70	-0.64	-0.47	-0.51	-0.41	-0.82	-0.72	-0.59
		Seasonal correlations								
		ORB		North of L18		South of L18				
		0	1	0	1	0	1			
OND	RN									
	TE	-0.34	-0.50			-0.36	-0.50			-0.36
JFMA	RN	0.42				0.50		0.89		
	TE	-0.41	-0.41					-0.85		
MJJAS	RN		0.86			0.84			0.77	
	TE	-0.50	-0.69			-0.55	-0.66	-0.42	-0.62	

1761
 1762 Monthly lag correlations of rainfall with river discharge (not shown) are less coherent than
 1763 those computed in **Table 4.1** for NDVI. Only April shows a significant rainfall-discharge
 1764 correlation ($r = 0.55$ at 1-month lag). For temperature, there are significant inverse
 1765 correlations at 0 and 1-month lags with discharge in October, November and December.
 1766 However, on seasonal scales there are significant rainfall-discharge correlations for OND ($r =$
 1767 0.51 at zero lag) and at 0.55 for JFMA rainfall versus MJJAS discharge consistent with
 1768 **Figure 4.3e**. OND rainfall versus MJJAS discharge correlations were weak. DJFM-MJJAS

1769 and OND-DJFM correlations were significant (not shown) but weaker than those for JFMA-
1770 MJJAS. The lag correlations suggest that although MJJAS experiences very little rainfall, its
1771 relatively high river discharge values are still responding to the previous summer's rainfall.
1772 Discharge-temperature seasonal correlations were weak. Also, there were no significant
1773 relationships found between discharge and any of the climate modes or Angola
1774 Low/Botswana High.

1775

1776 **Table 4.2** shows monthly lag detrended correlations of ENSO with NDVI, rainfall and
1777 temperature, over the ORB region, and north and south of L18. Only the summer months are
1778 shown because this is when ENSO tends to have strongest impacts on southern African
1779 rainfall, temperature and atmospheric circulation (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000). For
1780 rainfall, there are significant correlations in January-February at zero lag over all three
1781 regions which also exist at 1-month lag in February. March shows significant 1-month lag
1782 correlations (but weaker than in February) for the ORB and north of L18, the latter also at
1783 zero lag. For NDVI, there are significant ENSO relationships in February and March over the
1784 ORB and south of L18 (at both zero and 1-month lag) and in all three regions in April at both
1785 zero and 1-2-month lags. In February and March, there appears to be a significant ENSO-
1786 NDVI relationship south of L18 but not north of L18. This result might be related to
1787 differences in vegetation type between the two regions since the open woodlands with shrubs
1788 and grasslands south of L18 are more sensitive to ENSO events than the mainly woody cover
1789 north of L18 (Erasmi et al., 2009). Over southern Africa, ENSO is the main interannual
1790 climate mode affecting rainfall as already mentioned, and this rainfall is more important to
1791 grassy species, which, unlike the woodier species, do not have long roots that can draw water
1792 from deeper layers of the soil (Guilpart et 2828 al., 2017). For rainfall, its nonsignificant
1793 correlations with ENSO in March are not that much smaller than the significant ones, so the
1794 fact that they are only significant north of L18 is not that surprising. Temperature shows an
1795 even stronger ENSO connection than rainfall over all regions, mainly at 0 and 1-month lags,
1796 and unlike rainfall, also for December and April.

1797

1798 **Table 4.2** Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of ENSO with NDVI, rainfall
 1799 (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015).
 1800 Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

ENSO		ORB			North of L18			South of L18		
		0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1	2
Dec	NDVI									
	RN				-0.39	-0.38	-0.38			
	TE	0.73	0.74	0.77	0.73	0.75	0.78	0.69	0.71	0.73
Jan	NDVI							-0.37		
	RN	-0.51			-0.53			-0.45		
	TE	0.58	-0.38	-0.37					-0.37	-0.36
Feb	NDVI	-0.41	-0.37					-0.47	-0.45	
	RN	-0.54	-0.54		-0.47	-0.47		-0.45	-0.45	
	TE	0.76	0.75		0.77	0.77		0.69	0.69	
Mar	NDVI	-0.53	-0.54	-0.52				-0.54	-0.54	-0.52
	RN		-0.35		-0.35	-0.36				
	TE	0.69	0.72	0.72	0.73	0.76	0.75	0.58	0.62	0.62
Apr	NDVI	-0.36	-0.44	-0.44	-0.34	-0.35	-0.36		-0.42	-0.42
	RN									
	TE	0.65	0.76	0.77	0.67	0.78	0.78	0.56	0.68	0.68

1801
 1802 For SIOD, **Table 4.3** shows significant zero lag correlations with rainfall in January-April
 1803 north of L18, and only in April over the ORB. Since the area of strongest SIOD rainfall
 1804 impacts in southern Africa only partly overlaps the ORB region (Behera and Yamagata,
 1805 2001), the relatively less coherent signal than found for ENSO is not unexpected. The SIOD
 1806 correlations with temperature mainly occur in February-April (over all three regions) and are
 1807 in the opposite sense (a positive SIOD may be associated with wetter and cooler conditions).
 1808 NDVI shows significant correlations with the SIOD at 0-1-month lags in March and April
 1809 over the ORB and north of L18. For the SAM (not shown), only December rainfall over the
 1810 ORB region and over the area south of L18 were significantly positively correlated (both at
 1811 zero lag). December and April showed 0 and 1-month negative lag correlations with
 1812 temperature. No significant NDVI correlations were found.

1813

1814 **Table 4.3** Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of SIOD with NDVI, rainfall
 1815 (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-2015).
 1816 Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

SIOD		ORB region			North of L18			South of L18		
		0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1	2
Dec	NDVI	0.40						0.37		
	RN									
	TE									
Jan	NDVI									
	RN				0.47					
	TE				-0.39					
Feb	NDVI							0.36		
	RN				0.45	0.38				
	TE	-0.45			-0.47	-0.36		-0.40		
Mar	NDVI	0.36	0.37		0.35	0.35	0.34			
	RN									
	TE	-0.51	-0.51		-0.52	-0.54	-0.45	-0.44	-0.41	
Apr	NDVI				0.35	0.36	0.40			
	RN	0.36			0.38					
	TE	-0.45	-0.48	-0.39	-0.46	-0.52	-0.41	-0.39	-0.38	

1817
 1818 **Table 4.4** shows a relatively strong inverse correlation between the Angola Low and rainfall
 1819 in January, February and April mainly at zero lag over each region. A deeper low implies
 1820 more tropical convection and hence more cloud bands over the region, consistent with
 1821 increased rain and cooler temperatures (Mulenga et al., 2003; Cook et al., 2004; Munday and
 1822 Washington, 2017; Cr  tat et al., 2018). The latter is apparent in the strong temperature
 1823 correlations in January at zero lag across the regions and in February at both zero and 1-
 1824 month lags. NDVI shows significant correlations at 1 and 2-month lags in February and
 1825 March, respectively over the ORB and south of L18, and in December at zero lag for the
 1826 latter area. The Botswana High tends to show stronger relationships with rainfall and
 1827 temperature (**Table 4.5**) than does the Angola Low. The strongest relationships with rainfall
 1828 and temperature are in January and February at zero lag over all three regions. For NDVI,
 1829 there are significant zero lag correlations in January, February and April in the ORB and
 1830 south of L18 (stronger over the latter). One-month lag correlations exist in February and
 1831 March over the ORB and south of L18 and 2-months over these two regions in April. As for

1832 the climate modes, the temperature relationships with the Botswana High are generally
 1833 stronger than for rainfall and exist in all months over each region.

1834

1835 **Table 4.4** Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of Angola Low (AL) with NDVI,
 1836 rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18 (1982-
 1837 2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

AL		ORB region			North of L18			South of L18		
		0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1	2
Dec	NDVI							-0.45		
	RN									
	TE			0.44			0.46			0.40
Jan	NDVI	-0.41						-0.52		
	RN	-0.59			-0.55			-0.55		
	TE	0.75			0.76			0.66		
Feb	NDVI		-0.43						-0.51	
	RN	-0.61	-0.52		-0.59			-0.48	-0.48	
	TE	0.45	0.70		0.47	0.68		0.39	0.68	
Mar	NDVI			-0.59						-0.60
	RN					-0.40				
	TE		0.41	0.59		0.45	0.58			0.55
Apr	NDVI									
	RN	-0.43			-0.43			-0.38		
	TE			0.41			0.38			0.41

1838

1839 Seasonal correlations between the variables are given in **Table 4.6** for two different
 1840 definitions of summer; namely JFMA (left column) and DJFM (right column) since there are
 1841 variations in the December and April correlations in **Tables 4.2-4.5**. Note that OND is not
 1842 shown as none were significant. ENSO has a stronger relationship with rainfall over all three
 1843 regions in JFMA than does the SIOD but in DJFM the reverse is true. For NDVI and
 1844 temperature, ENSO is more strongly correlated than is SIOD in both JFMA and DJFM. As
 1845 was the case for the monthly correlations, the Botswana High has stronger relationships with
 1846 rainfall, NDVI or temperature than does the Angola Low. The not so strong relationships
 1847 with the Angola Low could be due to differences in the peak seasons for the development of
 1848 this Angola Low, which is strongest in January-February (Munday and Washington, 2017;
 1849 Howard and Washington, 2018). In general, relationships for temperature with any of the

1850 indices are stronger than those with either rainfall or NDVI. No significant correlations were
 1851 found for the SAM (not shown). Overall, **Table 4.6** shows stronger correlations north of L18
 1852 than south of L18 in both JFMA and DJFM.

1853

1854 **Table 4.5** Monthly lag detrended correlations (0-2 months) of Botswana High (BH) with
 1855 NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region, and north and south of L18
 1856 (1982-2015). Only correlations significant at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

BH		ORB region			North of L18			South of L18		
		0	1	2	0	1	2	0	1	2
Dec	NDVI									
	RN				-0.36					
	TE	0.76			0.78			0.71		
Jan	NDVI	-0.48						-0.58		
	RN	-0.71			-0.63			-0.67		
	TE	0.80			0.78			0.75		
Feb	NDVI	-0.42	-0.56					-0.50	-0.64	
	RN	-0.75	-0.55		-0.62			-0.64	-0.55	
	TE	0.85	0.75		0.84	0.69		0.80	0.77	
Mar	NDVI		-0.58	-0.63				-0.35	-0.66	-0.67
	RN		-0.40		-0.39	-0.52				
	TE	0.69	0.78	0.62	0.67	0.77	0.58	0.64	0.71	0.63
Apr	NDVI	-0.43		-0.51				-0.43		-0.54
	RN				-0.40		-0.36			
	TE	0.64	0.65	0.72	0.55	0.68	0.68	0.70	0.56	0.69

1857

1858 Partial correlation analyses were performed to understand how the relationships of the
 1859 Botswana High with the NDVI, rainfall and temperature change if the influence of ENSO on
 1860 the Botswana High is removed, to find that such relationships got weaker but generally still
 1861 remained significant at the 95% significance level. For example, in JFMA, over the ORB
 1862 region as a whole, correlations (partial correlations) of the Botswana High with the NDVI,
 1863 rainfall and temperature were -0.48 (-0.04), -0.70 (-0.47) and 0.83 (0.52), respectively. Note
 1864 that the stated correlations are the ones shown in **Table 4.6**, and that except for the stated
 1865 Botswana High – NDVI partial correlation, the other two are significant. Relationships of the
 1866 Angola Low and the SIOD with the NDVI, rainfall and temperature similarly got weaker

1867 when the influence of ENSO was removed. The results of partial correlation analysis were
 1868 similar when DJFM and the monthly data were used.

1869

1870 **Table 4.6** JFMA zero lag detrended correlations of ENSO, SIOD, Angola Low (AL) and
 1871 Botswana High (BH) versus NDVI, rainfall (RN) and temperature (TE) over the ORB region,
 1872 and north and south of L18 (1982-2015) (left panel). Right panel is as in the left panel but for
 1873 DJFM zero lags of the same variables. Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

	ORB	L18: North	L18: South	ORB	L18: North	L18: South
ENSO-NDVI	-0.39		-0.56	-0.44		-0.55
ENSO-RN	-0.59	-0.51	-0.49	-0.63	-0.57	-0.52
ENSO-TE	0.76	0.81	0.69	0.83	0.87	0.75
SIOD-NDVI				0.42		0.53
SIOD-RN	0.45	0.51		0.67	0.58	0.58
SIOD-TE	-0.44	-0.50	-0.36	-0.80	-0.77	-0.80
BH-NDVI	-0.48		-0.64	-0.41		-0.57
BH-RN	-0.70	-0.60	-0.60	-0.72	-0.63	-0.61
BH-TE	0.83	0.84	0.83	0.90	0.90	0.86
AL-NDVI			-0.38			-0.44
AL-RN	-0.45	-0.41	-0.38	-0.57	-0.53	-0.45
AL-TE	0.52	0.56	0.52	0.73	0.76	0.66

1874

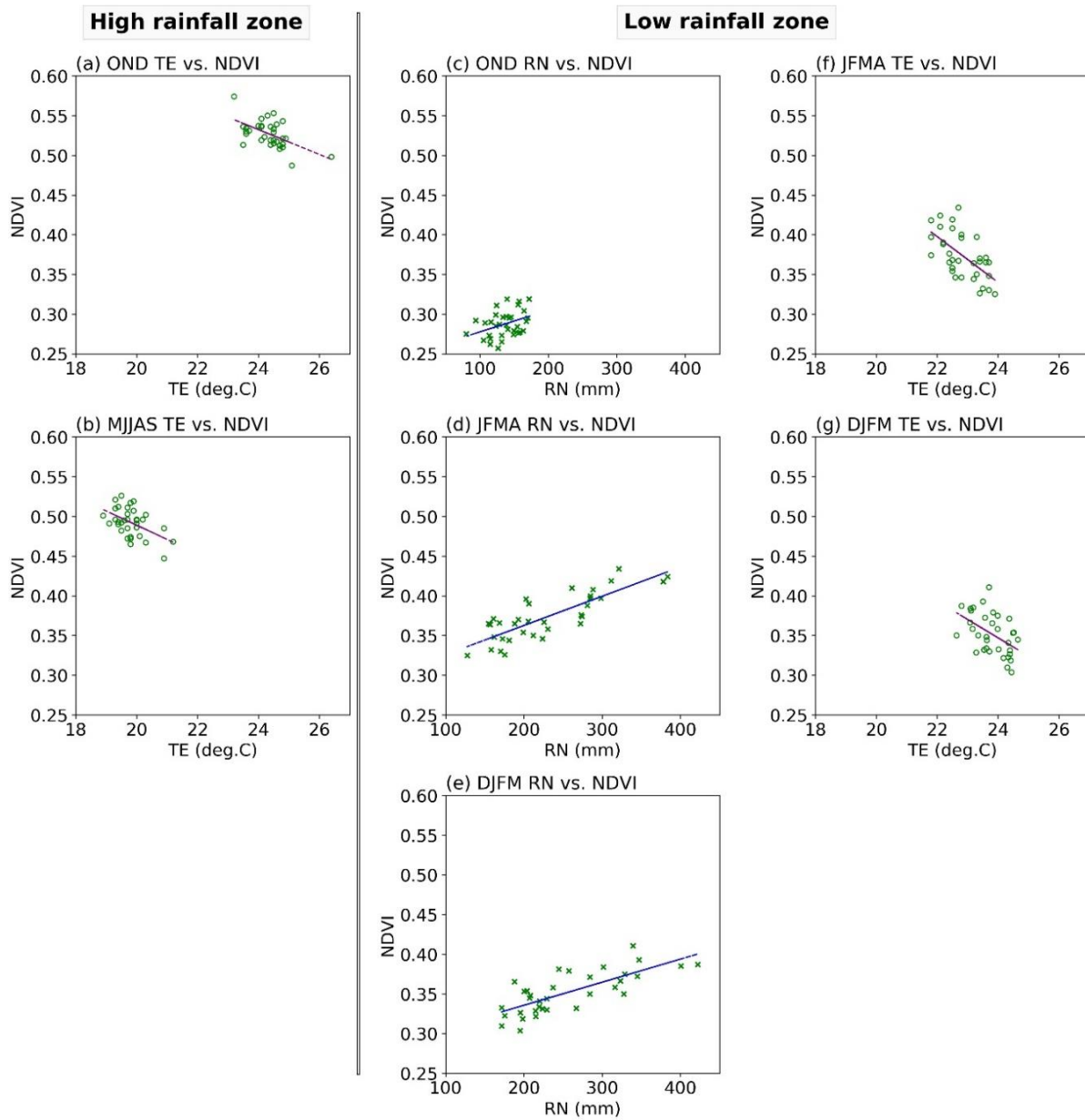
1875 4.3.3 Trends

1876

1877 Scatter plots and best-fit linear regression lines between the variables are shown in **Figure**
 1878 **4.5** for cases where the slopes are significant. Rainfall amounts for the high rainfall zone
 1879 (north of L18) in OND, JFMA and DJFM are more than double those for the low rainfall area
 1880 to its south but only the latter shows significant slopes with NDVI (**Figures 4.5c,d,e**). For
 1881 temperature, there is a negative relationship with NDVI in OND and MJJAS for north of L18
 1882 (**Figures 4.5a,b**) but only in summer (either JFMA or DJFM) south of L18 (**Figures 4.5f,g**).
 1883 Overall, **Figure 4.5** suggest that NDVI in the two regions has different relationships with
 1884 temperature and rainfall which may relate to the fact that south of L18, grassy species are
 1885 more dominant and the reverse to the north. The sensitivity of NDVI to rainfall south of L18
 1886 is in line with other studies for semi-arid African regions where water availability is a
 1887 constraint for vegetation growth (Malo and Nicholson, 1990; Farrar et al., 1994; Camberlin et
 1888 al., 2007; Richard et al., 2008, 2012).

1889

1890



1891

1892 **Figure 4.5** Scatter plots and best-fit linear regression lines showing the relationships between

1893 temperature (TE) and NDVI north of L18 [(a) and (b), left column] and between rainfall (RN)

1894 or temperature and NDVI south of L18 [(c)-(g)], for the period 1982-2015. All slopes are

1895 significant at $\alpha = 0.05$. x and y axis limits in TE-NDVI panels are the same. Also, x and y

1896 axis limits in RN-NDVI panels are the same.

1897

1898 Trends in the time series of NDVI, rainfall, temperature and river discharge are now

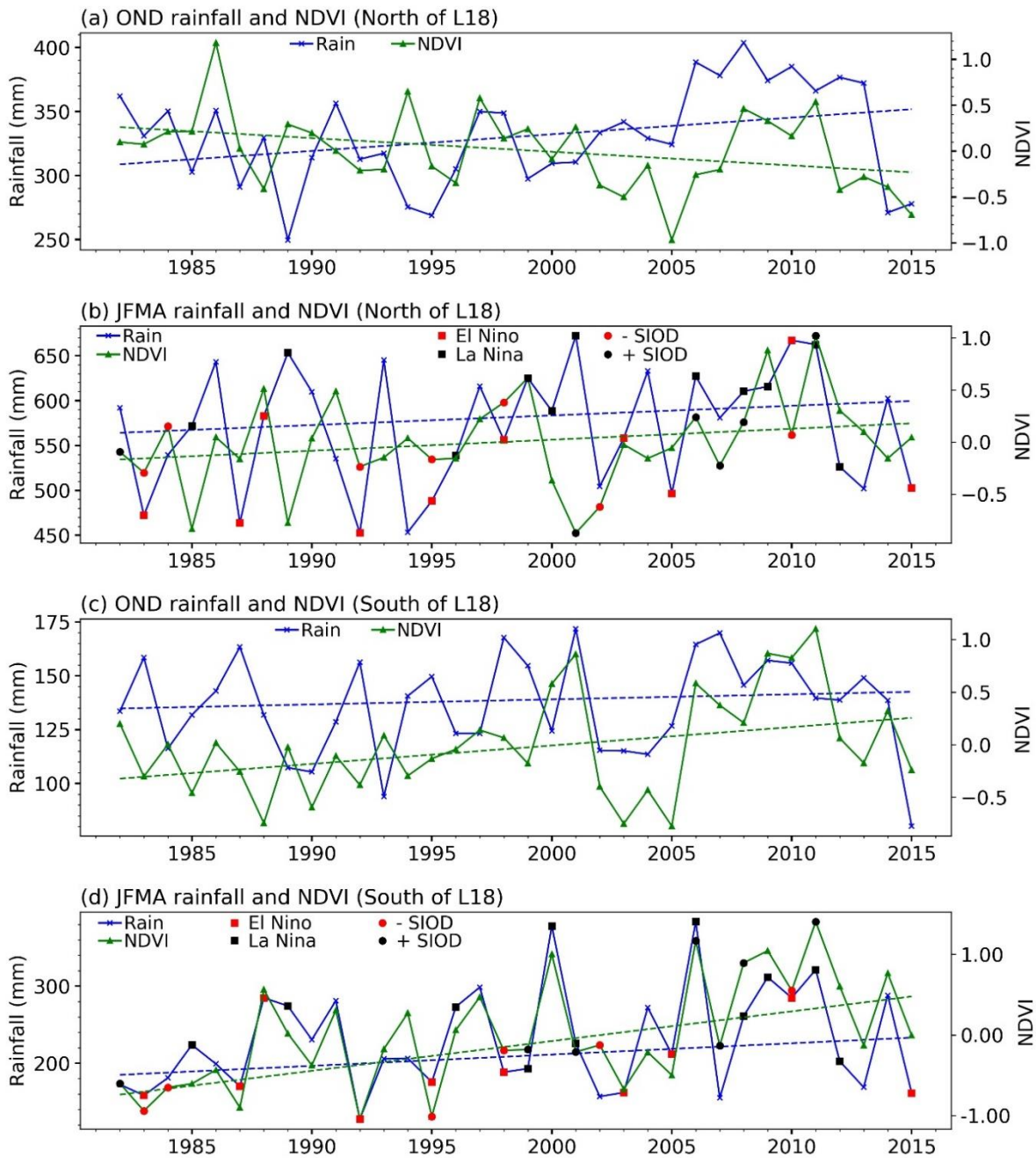
1899 considered. For temperature, the strongest warming trend occurs in OND for the area north of

1900 L18 ($0.35^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{decade}$). Weaker but still significant warming trends in OND exist over the area

1901 south of L18 and the ORB (0.27°C/decade and 0.28°C/decade, respectively). Significant
1902 MJJAS warming exists over the ORB (0.22°C/decade) and north of L18 (0.25°C/decade), but
1903 the warming trend south of L18 is not significant. JFMA and DJFM temperature trends were
1904 not significant. The strongest NDVI trends occur in JFMA (0.37/decade) over the area south
1905 of L18 (**Figure 4.6d**), followed by that for the overall ORB region (0.22/decade; not shown),
1906 whereas that for the area north of L18 was not significant (**Figure 4.6b**). Using DJFM instead
1907 of JFMA gives very similar results. For OND, NDVI trends are significant over both the area
1908 north (-0.15/decade; **Figure 4.6a**) and south (0.18/decade; **Figure 4.6c**) of L18, whereas
1909 those for the overall ORB region were not significant. None of the regions had significant
1910 MJJAS NDVI trends.

1911
1912 For rainfall, OND north of L18 shows a significant trend (wetting, 12.43 mm/decade; **Figure**
1913 **4.6a**) but not for the other two regions. The significant browning trend in this region may
1914 seem counter-intuitive; however, there is a very strong warming trend which may imply more
1915 evaporation and desiccation, suggesting that vegetation may be more vulnerable to the
1916 temperature increase than the rainfall increase. In addition, the negative NDVI trend may be
1917 biased by large negative anomalies in 2005 and 2012-2015 and a very large positive anomaly
1918 in 1986. Neither the 1986 nor the 2005 NDVI extremes are matched by corresponding
1919 extremes in rainfall. The wetting trends in JFMA in both regions are not significant (**Figures**
1920 **4.6a,c**) nor are there any trends in DJFM and in the dry MJJAS season. Although the wetting
1921 trend in JFMA in the area south of L18 is not significant, it is increasing (1.22 mm/decade),
1922 which is consistent with the greening trend there. For river discharge trends over the
1923 Cor_Box, there is a significant increasing trend in MJJAS (259.76 Mm³/decade).

1924



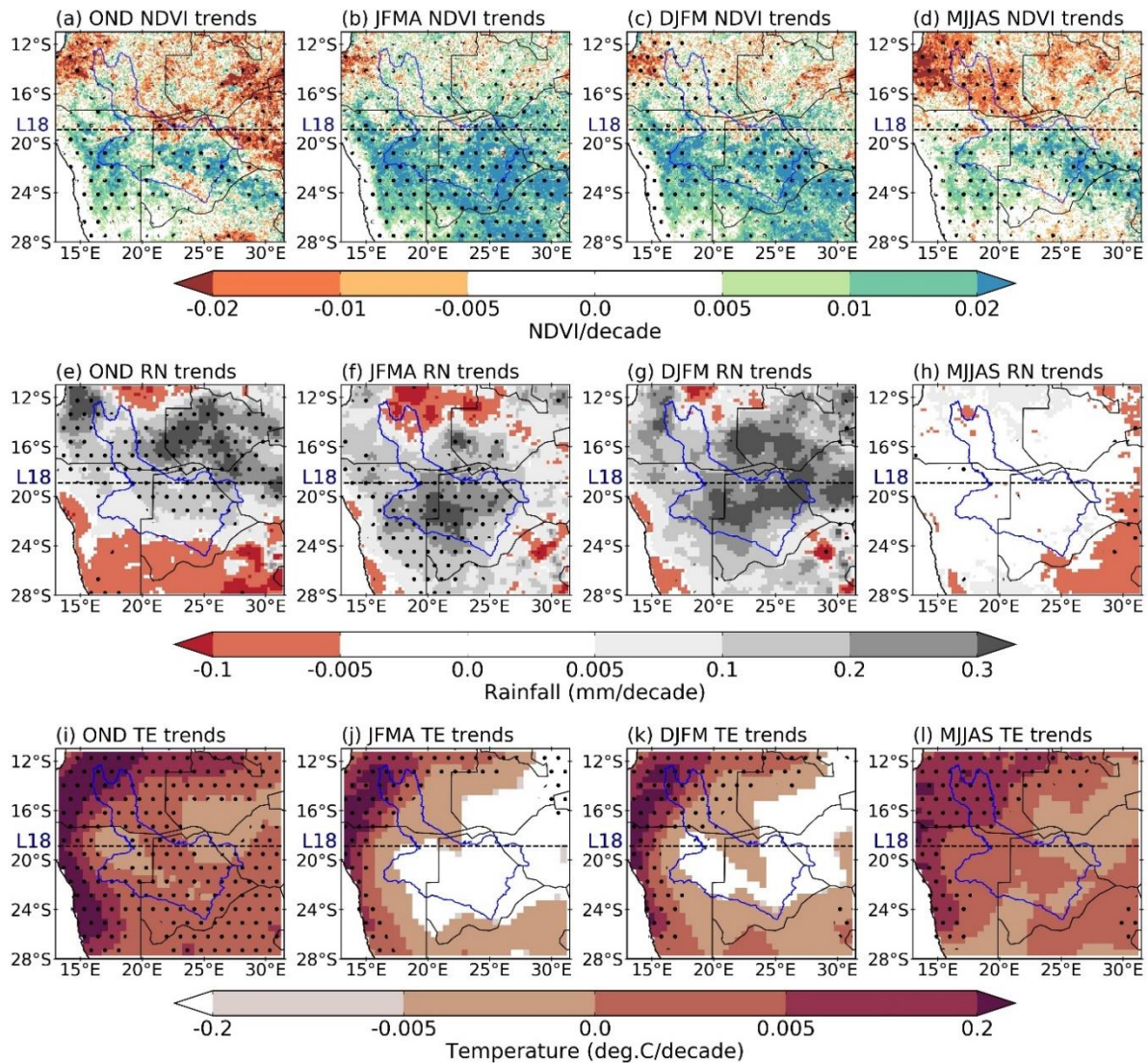
1925

1926 **Figure 4.6** (a) Time series of OND rainfall and standardised NDVI anomalies north of L18
 1927 (11° - 18.9° S, 13° - 31.5° E) (1982-2015). (b) is as in (a) but for JFMA. (c) Time series of OND
 1928 rainfall and standardised NDVI anomalies south of L18 (18.9° - 28° S, 13° - 31.5° E). (d) is as in
 1929 (c) but for JFMA. El Niño, La Niña, -SIOD and +SIOD events are labelled in (b) and (d).
 1930 Dashed lines are trend slopes. Significant slopes at $\alpha = 0.05$ in: (a) 12.43 mm/decade
 1931 (rainfall), -0.15/decade (NDVI); (c) 0.18/decade (NDVI); (d) 0.37/decade (NDVI).

1932

1933 **Figure 4.7** shows spatial trends in the variables. South of L18, there is a generally positive
 1934 trend in NDVI over the Okavango catchment area as well as the neighbouring region to the

1935 southeast, which is more widespread in the summer than in OND or MJJAS (**Figures 4.7a-**
1936 **d**). These results are consistent with Wingate et al. (2019b) who found greening trends across
1937 largescale agriculture on communal land in Namibia and with Thoithi et al. (2021) who found
1938 significant greening over parts of northern Namibia and northern Botswana in their analyses
1939 for December-February. North of L18, there are some significant browning areas in OND and
1940 MJJAS whereas the summer shows a mixture of browning and greening. For rainfall
1941 (**Figures 4.7e-h**), north of L18 shows mostly significantly increasing OND rainfall as does a
1942 small part south of L18 in the catchment area. In JFMA, much of the area south of L18 shows
1943 significant wetting as well as a few areas just to the north of this latitude. DJFM rainfall
1944 trends are similar but with smaller areas of significance while MJJAS shows no significant
1945 trend except drying in the far east. For temperature, **Figures 4.7i-l** show significant warming
1946 over most of the region in OND but only over the west and far north in the other seasons. The
1947 strong OND warming in the north and west may weaken the NDVI-rainfall pattern similarity
1948 in those regions. In summer, the areas of greening are more closely aligned with those
1949 showing wetting but there is not complete correspondence since NDVI also depends on other
1950 factors such as human activities and fire. Much of the browning NDVI trend in the north or
1951 far northwest of the domain seems to match up with large increasing temperature trends there
1952 in all seasons.
1953



1954

1955 **Figure 4.7** (a)-(d) Spatial distribution of trends (represented as per decade) for NDVI in
 1956 OND, JFMA, DJFM and MJJAS, respectively, over the ORB region (1982-2015). (e)-(h) is
 1957 as in (a)-(d) but for rainfall (RN). (i)-(j) is as in (a)-(d) but for temperature (TE). Areas with
 1958 significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$ are denoted with stippling. The blue polygon is the outline of
 1959 the ORB. “L18” is the 18.9°S latitude dividing the study area into high and low rainfall
 1960 zones.

1961

1962 4.3.4 Interannual variability

1963

1964 In addition to trends, **Figure 4.6** shows that the region is characterized by considerable
 1965 interannual variability in rainfall and NDVI (as well as temperature and river discharge, not
 1966 shown). The lowest values of rainfall and NDVI tend to coincide with El Niño/negative
 1967 SIOD (hereafter, -SIOD) events, whereas their highest values tend to coincide with La

1968 Niña/positive SIOD (hereafter, +SIOD) events. As already shown (*Section 4.3.2*), ENSO and
1969 SIOD correlate significantly with rainfall, NDVI and temperature in JFMA but not in OND.
1970 **Figures 4.6a,c** also show relatively long wet/dry periods such as wet 2006-2013 and dry
1971 1999-2005, which are reflected in NDVI and river discharge. In general, there is a relatively
1972 consistent influence of ENSO on NDVI and temperature, consistent with that previously
1973 found for rainfall (Nicholson and Entekhabi, 1987; Reason et al., 2000).

1974

1975 While El Niño (La Niña) and negative (positive) SIOD events are known to generally be
1976 associated with droughts (floods) over large areas of southern Africa, there are exceptions.
1977 **Figure 4.6** shows that the expected droughts during the El Niño events of 1987/1988,
1978 1997/1998 and 2009/2010 did not occur and NDVI values and river discharge (not shown)
1979 were not as low as for other El Niño events. The last two cases have been previously analysed
1980 in detail (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Driver et al., 2019) to find
1981 that the Angola Low, which acts as the source for the tropical-extratropical cloud bands and
1982 much of the convective activity over the region, did not weaken as expected during an El
1983 Niño event. The reason why the Angola Low did not weaken during the 1997/98 and 2009/10
1984 El Niño events could be related to the fact that ENSO impacts may be complicated by SST
1985 patterns in the adjacent Indian and Atlantic Oceans, which may influence the circulation and
1986 rainfall patterns over southern Africa either both partially dependent on ENSO (Goddard and
1987 Graham, 1999; Hoell et al., 2015), or independent of ENSO (Reason, 2001a; Washington and
1988 Preston, 2006), and which may also reinforce or oppose ENSO impacts (Reason and Smart,
1989 2015; Hoell et al., 2017).

1990

1991 Although the expected rainfall response of a drought during an El Niño did not happen during
1992 the 1987/1988 event, its regional impacts and circulation have not been given much attention.
1993 It is important to better understand these non-conforming events; 1987/1988 is also of interest
1994 as it was part of the protracted 1986-1988 El Niño. Although protracted El Niño events are
1995 often associated with drought over the region (Allan et al., 2003), only JFMA 1987
1996 experienced dry conditions when SST anomalies showed a more eastern equatorial Pacific El
1997 Niño than the more central Pacific or Modoki type pattern in summer 1987/1988.

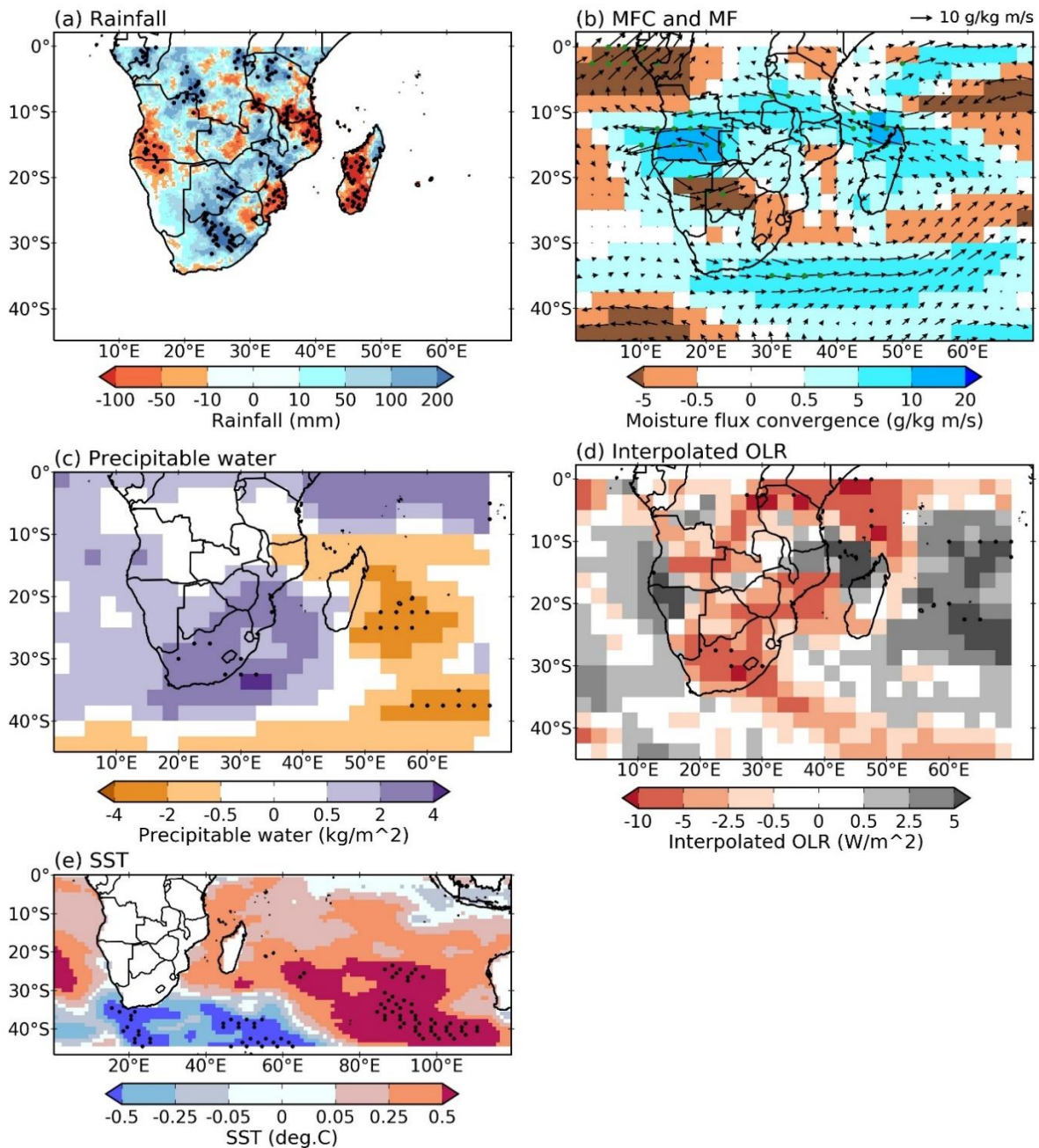
1998

1999 It was anomalously wet in both regions in JFMA 1988 (**Figures 4.6b,d**) but less obviously
2000 wet in OND 1987 north of L18 (**Figure 4.6a**) compared to south of L18 (**Figure 4.6c**), hence
2001 only JFMA circulation anomalies are shown (**Figure 4.8**). For JFMA, 1988 was the second

2002 wettest El Niño summer during the record after 2010 and NDVI values were correspondingly
2003 high (**Figures 4.6b,d**). **Figure 4.8a** shows that it was also anomalously wet over many areas
2004 in southern Africa. There were positive low-level moisture flux convergence anomalies over
2005 most of the subcontinent particularly over Angola, northern Namibia and western Zambia
2006 (**Figure 4.8b**), and positive precipitable water anomalies (**Figure 4.8c**) indicating more
2007 moisture over the region. Easterly anomalies in the northern Mozambique Channel region
2008 suggest less export of moisture away from tropical southeast Africa towards northern
2009 Madagascar by the northwesterly monsoon and hence more moisture available over the
2010 mainland. The anticyclonic anomaly over and east of Madagascar also helped advect more
2011 moisture inland. The lack of an obvious strengthening of the mid-level Botswana High in
2012 JFMA 1988 and reduced subsidence (not shown), unlike the strengthening of this system
2013 which occurs in most other El Niño events (Driver and Reason, 2017), may also help explain
2014 the relatively wet conditions. Interpolated OLR anomalies were negative over most of the
2015 region (**Figure 4.8d**) suggesting enhanced convective cloud, consistent with the wetter
2016 conditions. SST anomalies in the tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean were positive (**Figure**
2017 **4.8e**) which has previously been associated with wetter summers over subtropical southern
2018 Africa (Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006). Thus, regional circulation anomalies during
2019 summer 1987/1988 were more favourable for wetter conditions over subtropical southern
2020 Africa than are typically expected during El Niño events.

2021
2022 Given more frequent occurrences of ENSO Modoki events in recent decades (Ashok and
2023 Yamagata, 2009; Yeh et al., 2009), it was also of interest to calculate correlations of the
2024 ENSO Modoki index (Ashok et al., 2007) with NDVI, rainfall and temperature over the ORB
2025 region. Except for the correlation between the ENSO Modoki index and NDVI ($r = -0.22$, $p >$
2026 0.05) which was not significant, those between the ENSO Modoki index and the other two
2027 variables [rainfall ($r = -0.33$, $P < 0.05$), temperature ($r = 0.36$, $p < 0.05$)] were significant
2028 during JFMA 1982-2015. All these three correlations are relatively weaker than those
2029 between the Niño 3.4 index (discussed above) representing ENSO and the three variables
2030 (NDVI, rainfall, temperature) shown in **Table 4.6**.

2031



2032

2033 **Figure 4.8** JFMA 1988 circulation anomalies with respect to 1981-2010 climatology. (a), (b),
 2034 (c), (d) show anomalies of rainfall, 700 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC) (shading) and
 2035 moisture flux (MF) (vectors), precipitable water and interpolated OLR, respectively, over the
 2036 region 45°S-0°N, 0°-70°E. (e) shows anomalies of SST (45°S-0°N, 0°-120°E). Areas with
 2037 statistically significant anomalies based on bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with
 2038 stippling.

2039

2040 As already mentioned, summer 1987/1988 showed a central Pacific type of El Niño SST
 2041 anomaly. Ratnam et al. (2014) investigated the impacts on December-February southern

2042 African rainfall of central Pacific (CP) versus eastern Pacific (EP) type of events to find that
2043 El Niño related dry conditions over southern Africa tend to be more severe for the latter type.
2044 Although both types of El Niño generally suppress precipitation over southern Africa, the
2045 impacts on moisture fluxes into the region are stronger for the former than for the latter type
2046 of events, such as 1987/1988. Yeh et al. (2009) found that the frequency of CP El Niño
2047 events has increased compared to the EP type particularly from the 1990s, which they
2048 associated with a change in the thermocline structure in the equatorial Pacific as a result of
2049 anthropogenic global warming. Ashok and Yamagata (2009) suggested that the CP El Niño
2050 events would become more frequent in the future than the EP type. If that happens, then the
2051 relationships of ENSO with rainfall, temperature and NDVI over the ORB (**Tables 4.2 and**
2052 **4.6**) may change in the future.

2053

2054 *4.3.5 The 2006-2013 wet epoch*

2055

2056 The substantially wet and greener (2006-2013) period compared to the dry (1999-2005)
2057 period (**Figure 4.6**) mentioned in the preceding section is now considered. These wet and dry
2058 periods are clearer in the area north of L18 than in the area south of this latitude. Most
2059 attention on these well-known quasi-decadal to decadal wet and dry spells of subtropical
2060 southern Africa climate (e.g., Tyson et al., 1975; Tyson, 1986; Wolski et al., 2012; Malherbe
2061 et al., 2014; Reason, 2016) has focused on the mid or late summer rather than on OND. Here
2062 the wet (2006-2013) and dry (1999-2005) signal is stronger in OND, hence it is of interest to
2063 investigate the potential mechanisms associated with it. In addition, it has been shown above
2064 that OND rainfall may influence JFMA vegetation and river discharge. These longer-term
2065 wet anomalies are important since they have positive effects on NDVI and water resources.

2066

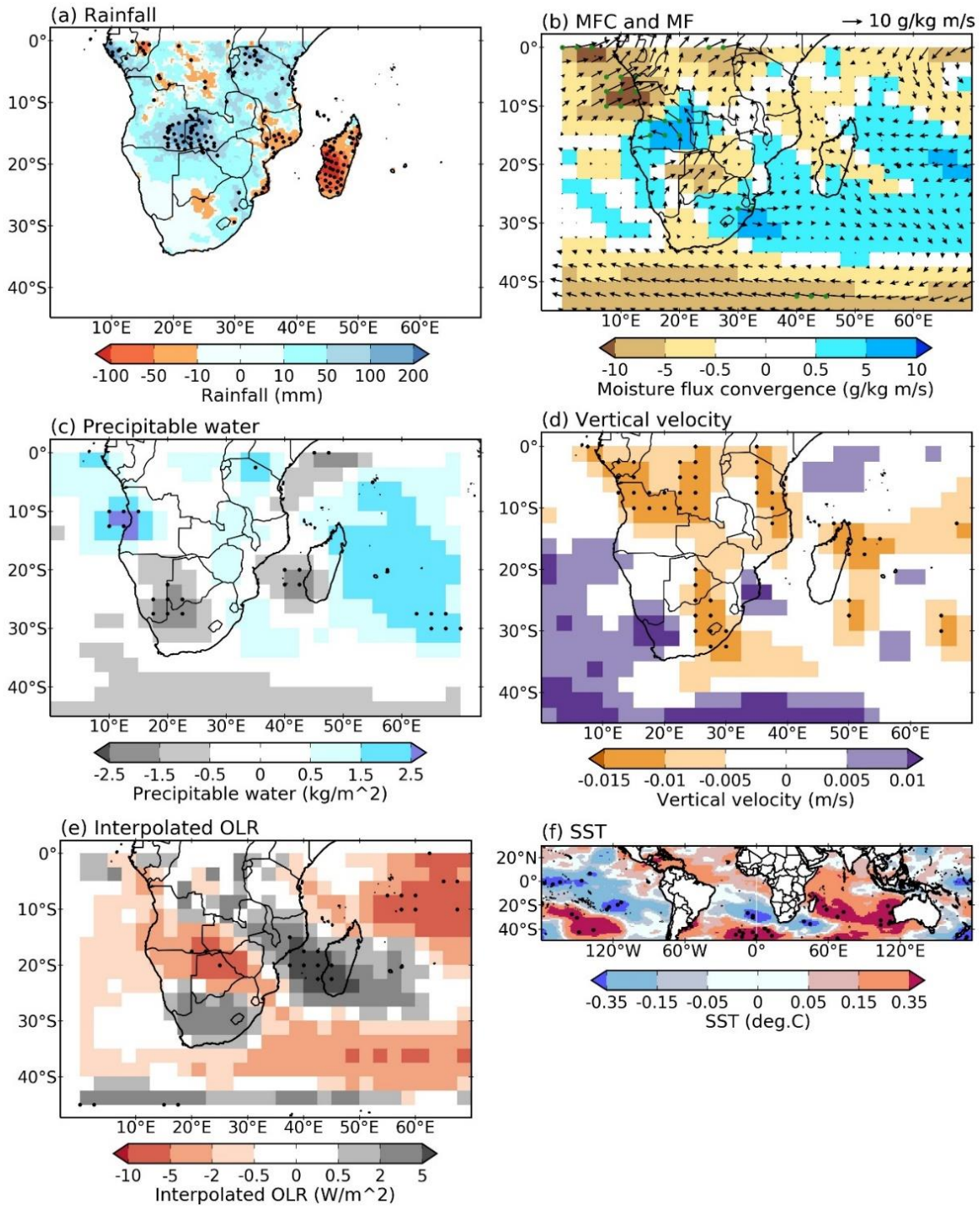
2067 Composite difference anomalies between the wet 2006-2013 and 1999-2005 dry epoch are
2068 shown in **Figure 4.9**. Although many parts of southern Africa were wetter in OND 2006-
2069 2013 relative to 1999-2005, the signal was particularly strong over the lower lying area of
2070 southeastern Angola/western Zambia/northern Botswana. This area of particularly wet OND
2071 seasons matches up well with that in low-level moisture flux convergence (**Figure 4.9b**)
2072 which arises from stronger than average low-level westerly anomalies from the tropical
2073 southeast Atlantic into northern Angola/Congo and southerly anomalies over western
2074 Zambia. **Figure 4.9c** indicates that there were large positive anomalies in precipitable water
2075 over Angola and the neighbouring ocean, which may be related to the warmer SST conditions

2076 in the tropical southeast Atlantic (**Figure 4.9f**) and westerly anomalies there (**Figure 4.9b**). In
2077 the Pacific, La Niña Modoki type SST anomalies were present. Almost all of Angola and the
2078 western half of Zambia show relative uplift (**Figure 4.9d**) consistent with the rainfall
2079 composite differences.

2080

2081 Furthermore, the OLR differences (**Figure 4.9e**) suggest that the increased rainfall over the
2082 eastern Angola/western Zambia/northern Botswana may have resulted from increased local
2083 tropical convection and associated cloud band activity stretching southeast towards
2084 northeastern South Africa and the neighbouring northern Agulhas Current region. Differences
2085 in low to mid-level specific humidity (not shown) suggest that the Congo Air Boundary,
2086 which separates moist equatorial unstable air from drier subtropical air further south over
2087 southern Africa (Howard and Washington, 2019, 2020) shifted slightly further south during
2088 2006-2013 relative to 1999-2005, favourable for more moisture over the region. Taken
2089 together **Figures 1.1** and **4.9a-d** suggest that low-level moisture converging over
2090 southeastern Angola/western Zambia border region was confined there to some extent by the
2091 surrounding topography which together with the enhanced uplift led to larger positive rainfall
2092 anomalies there than elsewhere in southern Africa.

2093



2094

2095 **Figure 4.9** OND composites of wet (2006-2013) minus dry (1999-2005) period. (a), (b), (c),
 2096 (d) and (e) show composite anomalies of rainfall, 700 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC)
 2097 (shading) and moisture flux (MF) (vectors), precipitable water, 700 hPa vertical velocity and
 2098 interpolated OLR, respectively, over the region 45°S-0°N, 0°-70°E. (f) shows composite
 2099 anomalies of SST (50°S-30°N, 180°W-180°E). Areas with statistically significant anomalies
 2100 based on bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling.

2101

2102 **4.4 Conclusions**

2103

2104 Rainfall, temperature and their relationships with NDVI and river discharge over the
2105 Okavango River Basin, a highly biodiverse and sensitive region in southern Africa, have been
2106 studied on various time scales. A pronounced annual cycle is present over the basin with 1-2-
2107 month lags between NDVI and rainfall. Consistent with other studies (e.g., Murray-Hudson et
2108 al., 2006; Hughes et al., 2011), rainfall and temperature show pronounced interannual
2109 variability which is reflected in river discharge and NDVI. Monthly lag correlations for river
2110 discharge are less coherent than those for NDVI, but both discharge-rainfall and discharge-
2111 temperature correlations are significant [positive (negative) for the former (latter) correlation]
2112 at 1-month lags. Both river discharge and NDVI are more strongly correlated with rainfall
2113 than with temperature at monthly and seasonal time scales. MJJAS river discharge essentially
2114 responds to the previous season's rainfall (MJJAS rainfall is minimal).

2115

2116 Rainfall-NDVI regression slopes are significant over the area south but not north of L18,
2117 suggesting that vegetation is more sensitive to rainfall over the former region. Overall,
2118 NDVI-rainfall and NDVI-temperature relationships are statistically different north and south
2119 of L18. Relationships between rainfall and the various climate mode or circulation indices
2120 tend to be stronger for the region north of L18 than for the area south of L18. The
2121 correlations are stronger in the summer than in OND. These relationships with rainfall, are
2122 consistent with other studies over southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000;
2123 Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Driver and Reason, 2017). On monthly scales during the
2124 summer, there are significant relationships at both 0 and 1-month lags between rainfall or
2125 temperature (and to lesser extent NDVI) and the climate modes [El Niño-Southern
2126 Oscillation (ENSO), subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD)] or the Botswana High, which
2127 are generally strongest in February and March. The rainfall (temperature) correlations with
2128 the Botswana High and ENSO were negative (positive), with the SIOD they were positive
2129 (negative), and the NDVI correlations (negative) were significant mainly with ENSO.

2130

2131 The 1987/1988 El Niño has been found to be one of the few El Niño events during which
2132 drought conditions (typical for these events [Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and
2133 Mason, 2007; Driver et al., 2019]) did not occur. Such El Niño events imply higher
2134 vegetative activity and water availability than during typical El Niño events; hence this
2135 1987/1988 case has been investigated. Increased low-level moisture flux convergence and

2136 warm SST anomalies in the tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean favoured wetter conditions over
2137 the ORB region in this summer rather than the expected El Niño drought. Similarly, the
2138 wetter and greener OND 2006-2013 epoch was related to warmer SST in the tropical
2139 southeast Atlantic (as well as La Niña Modoki conditions), increased low-level moisture flux
2140 convergence and uplift over Angola and western Zambia relative to the preceding dry and
2141 browner 1999-2005 dry epoch.

2142

2143 Finally, significant greening trends were found south of L18, particularly in summer, while
2144 north of L18, there was a strong browning trend in MJJAS but not in the other seasons
2145 (except in the far west). Rainfall trend maps show significant increasing trends over most of
2146 the area north of L18 in OND as well as central Botswana while JFMA shows significant
2147 wetting over most of the area south of L18 as well as northwestern Namibia. River discharge
2148 over the Cor_Box are significant and positive only in MJJAS. Note that the river discharge
2149 and NDVI trends could, to some extent, be masked by human activity such as land clearing
2150 for agriculture and settlement (VanderPost et al., 2005; Weinzierl and Schilling, 2013).
2151 Almost the entire region shows significant warming in OND while in the other seasons, such
2152 warming mainly occurs in the far west and north of the ORB region. The warming in
2153 temperature is consistent with other studies over southern Africa and more broadly over
2154 Africa (Barros and Field, 2014; Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et al., 2018). The strong
2155 warming trend may worsen water losses from the region with adverse impacts on vegetation
2156 growth, water availability, floodplain farming on the periphery of the Okavango Delta, and
2157 tourism while compounding the effects of extreme events such as heat waves, droughts and
2158 fires in the region.

2159

2160 The next chapter considers extreme rainfall events over the ORB region.

2161

2162 **Chapter 5: Extreme rainfall events over the Okavango River basin,**
2163 **southern Africa**

2164

2165 **This chapter is presented as the paper submitted to Weather and Climate Extremes. It**
2166 **addresses the questions below:**

2167

2168 *Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Extreme rainfall events over the Okavango*
2169 *River basin, southern Africa. Submitted to Weather and Climate Extremes.*

2170

- 2171 ▪ What are the characteristics of extreme rainfall events over the western central
2172 southern Africa (WCSA)?
- 2173 ▪ What are the most important weather systems driving these events?
- 2174 ▪ What proportion of these extreme events contribute to summer rainfall totals?
- 2175 ▪ What are the factors that might have contributed to the severe floods that occurred
2176 over Ngamiland during the summer of 2017?

2177

2178 **Abstract**

2179

2180 Characteristics of extreme rainfall events in the highly biodiverse Okavango River Basin
2181 (ORB) in western central southern Africa are analysed for the main rainy season, January-
2182 April (JFMA). These characteristics include frequencies, intensities, spatial distributions,
2183 variability and trends of extreme rainfall events accumulated over 1-day (DP1) and 3-days
2184 (DP3). On average, DP1 (DP3) events contribute ~10% (~17%) rainfall totals but in some
2185 years they both contribute more than 30%. Tropical-extratropical cloud bands are responsible
2186 for most of the events with tropical lows also important. The considerable interannual
2187 variability in extreme events appears related to El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the
2188 Botswana High variability. Although ENSO influences the extreme events as well as rainfall
2189 totals more generally over southern Africa, by far the wettest season over the iconic
2190 Okavango Delta region, in Ngamiland, Botswana, occurred during neutral JFMA 2017. These
2191 heavy rains resulted from a deeper Angola Low, weaker mid-level Botswana High which
2192 favoured convection in the region together with anomalous westerly moisture fluxes from the
2193 tropical southeast Atlantic and enhanced low-level moisture convergence over most of the
2194 region during January-early March. A dry period from mid-March was broken by the second
2195 most intense rainfall event on April 22nd, resulting from a cut-off low. Significant increasing
2196 trends were found in DP1 frequencies, as well as in rain-days and rain totals over many areas.
2197 These trends have important implications for water and agricultural management, and
2198 wildlife conservation in the highly biodiverse ORB.

2199

2200 **5.1 Introduction**

2201

2202 Although drought is often considered to be the most damaging climate event in southern
2203 Africa in terms of socio-economic impact, devastating floods resulting from severe weather
2204 can sometimes cause significant loss of life and devastation to infrastructure. For example,
2205 about 1000 people died as a result of Tropical Cyclone Eline making landfall near Beira,
2206 Mozambique in February 2000 (Reason and Keibel, 2004). Other well-known tropical
2207 cyclone induced floods in southeastern Africa which caused huge loss of life, displaced tens
2208 of thousands of people and resulted in much damage are Favio in 2007, Idai and Kenneth in
2209 2019 (Mawren et al., 2020). In addition to tropical cyclones, the region has sometimes
2210 experienced devastating floods resulting from mesoscale convective systems (Blamey and
2211 Reason, 2013; Morake et al., 2021), tropical lows and tropical-extratropical cloud bands
2212 (Rapolaki et al., 2019; Mpungose et al., 2022). For example, the January 2013 event in
2213 northern South Africa/southern Mozambique which involved both a cloud band and a tropical
2214 low caused 113 deaths and temporal displacement of over 185 000 people (Manhique et al.,
2215 2015).

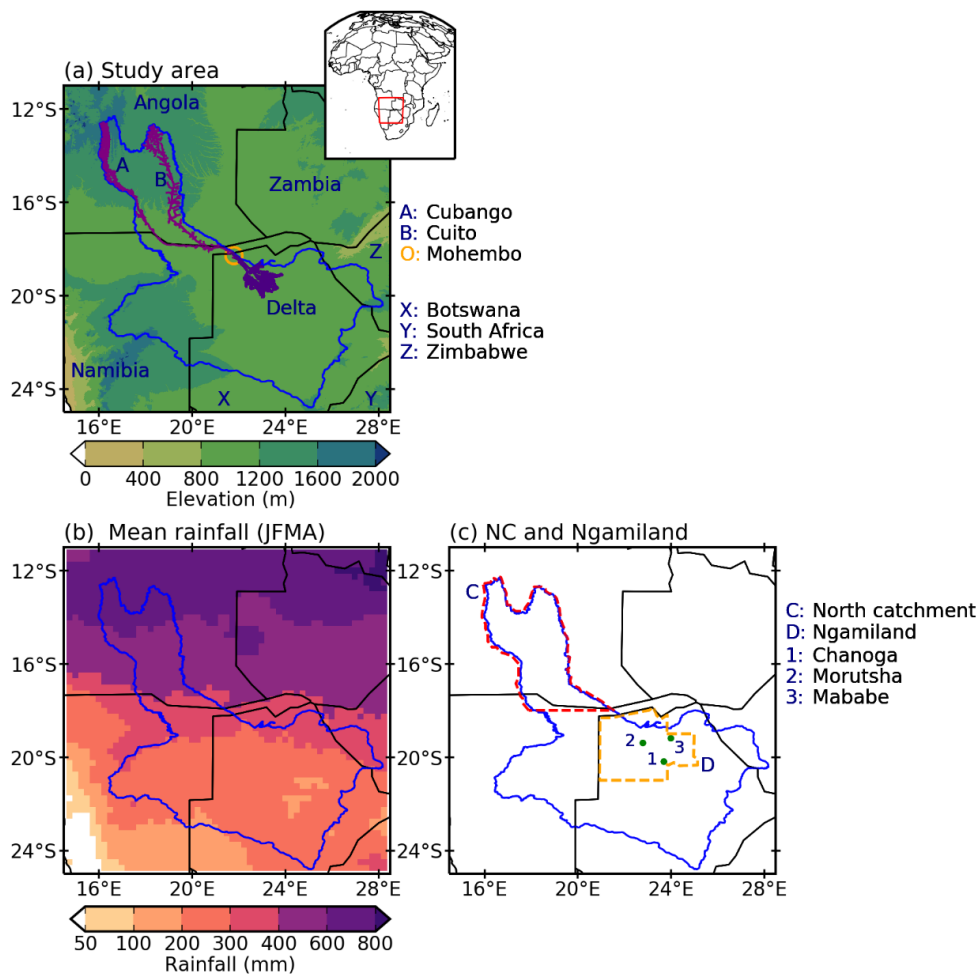
2216

2217 More recently in April 2022, severe flooding along the east coast of South Africa associated
2218 with a cut-off low resulted in over 400 deaths and displacement of over 40000 people
2219 (UNICEF, 2022). These and other examples highlight the vulnerability of the population in
2220 many parts of southern Africa to extreme rainfall events. Such vulnerability is an ongoing
2221 problem since the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) fifth (IPCC, 2013)
2222 and sixth (IPCC, 2021) reports show that the frequency and intensity of extreme rainfall
2223 events are likely to increase in a warming climate, and thus there is need to better understand
2224 these events over the region.

2225

2226 While extreme rainfall events have been relatively well studied over some parts of southern
2227 Africa such as South Africa (e.g., Dyson et al., 2015), Namibia (e.g., Muller et al., 2008) and
2228 Mozambique (e.g., Manhique et al., 2015; Rapolaki and Reason, 2018), relatively little
2229 research has been done on these events in the Okavango River Basin (ORB). The little
2230 research on extreme rainfall events in the ORB include that done by Wolski et al. (2014),
2231 who analysed results from an attribution modelling system designed to examine how
2232 anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions contributed to the floods that occurred in this ORB
2233 in 2009-2011. They found that the probability of occurrence of these floods in the current

2234 climate is likely lower than it would have been in a climate free of anthropogenic greenhouse
 2235 gases. The ORB region (blue polygon in **Figure 5.1a**), located in central southern Africa, is
 2236 of particular interest since it has high biodiversity, contains unique ecosystems as well as the
 2237 Okavango Delta, where the streamflow originating largely in the Angolan Highlands
 2238 terminates. The Delta is a United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization
 2239 (UNESCO) world heritage and Ramsar site (UNESCO, 2014).
 2240



2241
 2242 **Figure 5.1** (a) The study area, i.e., the WCSA (11°-25°S, 14.5°-28.5°E) and its elevation
 2243 (highest elevation of 1600-1800 m above sea level is in central Angola). Location of the
 2244 study area in southern Africa is shown in the insert of this panel. The Okavango Delta, the
 2245 two main rivers (Cubango and Cuito), and country names are indicated and labelled on the
 2246 right of the figure. (b) JFMA mean rainfall (1981-2021). (c) Location of the north catchment
 2247 (NC) and Ngamiland within the ORB (blue polygon in all 3 panels). Villages in Ngamiland
 2248 that reported floods during JFMA 2017 include those denoted by “1”, “2” and “3”, labelled
 2249 on the right of the figure.

2250

2251 Over the ORB and typically elsewhere in Africa south of 10°S, seasonal rains typically start
2252 sometime after the beginning of October and end in March or April, except in the far
2253 southwest and the south coast of South Africa. This rainfall has mostly convective origins,
2254 either brought about by random air mass thunderstorms or organised mesoscale convective
2255 systems (MCSs; Blamey and Reason, 2012, 2013), tropical lows (Munday and Washington,
2256 2017; Howard et al., 2019; Howard and Washington, 2020; Rapolaki et al., 2019, 2020) or
2257 tropical-extratropical cloud bands (or tropical-temperate troughs) (Harrison, 1984). The latter
2258 are synoptic scale features typically extending from southern Angola diagonally in a
2259 southeastwards direction to the southwest Indian Ocean and producing widespread rainfall
2260 (Hart et al., 2010, 2013; Ratna et al., 2013; Manhique et al., 2011, 2015; Macron et al., 2014).
2261 In anomalously dry summers over subtropical southern Africa, the cloud bands tend to be
2262 located much further east and mainly over the southwest Indian Ocean.

2263

2264 There is relatively strong rainfall gradient within the ORB with the Angolan Highlands
2265 receiving much higher rainfall totals compared to the Okavango Delta (**Figure 5.1b**). The
2266 Angolan Highlands are typically wetter than elsewhere in the ORB due to the presence of the
2267 Angola Low (Mulenga et al., 2003; Cook et al., 2004; Munday and Washington, 2017; Crétat
2268 et al., 2018; Howard and Washington, 2018) as well as orographic uplift and convection. This
2269 low-level convergence results from moisture sources in the western Indian Ocean (main
2270 source), the tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean north of about 16°S and the Congo Basin
2271 (D'Abreton and Tyson, 1995; Rouault et al., 2003a; Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006;
2272 Vigaud et al., 2009; Manhique et al., 2015; Reason and Smart, 2015; Rapolaki et al., 2019,
2273 2020).

2274

2275 As with other parts of southern Africa, the summer rains over the ORB are influenced by the
2276 El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO; Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and
2277 Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018; Moses et al., 2022). Other modes of variability
2278 affecting subtropical southern African summer rainfall [Subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole
2279 (Behera and Yamagata, 2001), Southern Annular Mode (Thompson and Wallace, 2000)] do
2280 not seem to strongly impact on the ORB however (Moses et al., 2022). Although much work
2281 has been done in connection with ENSO and its relationship with seasonal rainfall totals over
2282 southern Africa, not much attention has been paid to its impact on extreme rainfall events
2283 over the ORB. Further work is also needed to better understand the role of ENSO on

2284 impacting regional circulation features. For example, the mid-level Botswana High tends to
2285 suppress rainfall when it is strong since a strong Botswana High is associated with increased
2286 subsidence over the region, and the opposite tends to occur when it is weak (Reason, 2016;
2287 Driver and Reason, 2017).

2288

2289 While it can be argued that extreme rainfall events make an important contribution to the
2290 ORB streamflow and maintain the much-needed water levels to support the unique
2291 biodiversity in this region, they can also cause local flash flooding leading to loss of life and
2292 widespread damage to crops and settlements. For example, severe flooding in 2004 damaged
2293 crops on flood recessed land in the periphery of the Delta (Magole and Thapelo, 2004). Also,
2294 over Ngamiland, which is the administrative district in northwestern Botswana within which
2295 the iconic Okavango Delta lies (see **Figure 5.1c** for locations), records from the Botswana
2296 Disaster Management Office reveal that severe floods occurred in 2009, 2010, 2011, and
2297 2017 with all causing substantial damage.

2298

2299 This Delta region has the most biodiverse and sensitive ecosystems in the ORB and has been
2300 termed a global biodiversity hotspot (Francis et al., 2021), attracting tourists from all around
2301 the world (Mbaiwa, 2017). The ecosystems of this iconic Delta crucially depend on the
2302 highly seasonal streamflow which originates from rainfall in the Angolan Highlands
2303 (McCarthy et al., 2003; Andersson et al., 2003, 2006; Gumbricht et al., 2004; Murray-Hudson
2304 et al., 2006; Wilk et al., 2006; Hughes et al., 2011; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2006b, 2008;
2305 Wolski et al., 2006; Wolski et al., 2012; Wolski et al., 2014), further highlighting the
2306 importance of the ORB. In addition, the streamflow reaching the Delta region is the major
2307 source of freshwater for the rural population there, most of whom are impoverished and rely
2308 on subsistence farming (mainly maize) or basic livestocking for survival (Kgathi et al., 2006;
2309 Weinzierl and Schilling, 2013).

2310

2311 However, since many rainfall events typically extend beyond river basin boundaries, here a
2312 larger region is chosen within which to perform the analysis; namely a box in western central
2313 southern Africa (hereafter referred to as WCSA) (**Figure 5.1a**). This box was chosen such
2314 that the position of its boundaries did not exceed a distance of 2° from the western-, northern-
2315 , eastern- and southern-most point of the Okavango River catchment spatial extent (blue
2316 polygon), to ensure that extreme events that covered a substantial part of this catchment were
2317 captured. Specifically, this study (i) examines variability in the distribution of extreme

2318 rainfall events and their trends over the WCSA, (ii) identifies the most important weather
2319 systems driving these events, (iii) examines the contribution of these events to the summer
2320 rainfall totals and (iv) examines factors that might have contributed to the severe floods that
2321 occurred over Ngamiland during the summer of 2017. A better understanding of these
2322 extreme rainfall characteristics as well as the weather patterns associated with them is
2323 important for improving weather and seasonal forecasts in the region. Such understanding is
2324 also crucial for resource management purposes, given that the water and food security of the
2325 ORB as well as its unique ecosystems depend crucially on rainfall distribution during the
2326 summer rainy season.

2327

2328 **5.2 Data and Methods**

2329

2330 *5.2.1 Datasets*

2331

2332 The study area is the WCSA box (11° - 25° S, 14.5° - 28.5° E) (**Figure 5.1a**) within which the
2333 ORB (blue polygon) lies. Due to a shortage of rainfall observations in this region, particularly
2334 in Angola, the Climate Hazards Infrared Precipitation with Station dataset (CHIRPS) version
2335 2 (Funk et al., 2015) is used. This dataset has daily data available from 1981 to near-present
2336 and a spatial resolution of 0.05° . Moses et al. (2022) found that CHIRPS data performed
2337 reasonably well when compared with monthly rain gauge data for stations in northern
2338 Botswana and Namibia. Similarly, Rapolaki et al. (2019) and Thoithi et al. (2021) found good
2339 agreement between CHIRPS and station data in northern South Africa. As a further check,
2340 rainfall characteristics over the WCSA were also evaluated using the Tropical Rainfall
2341 Measuring Mission (TRMM; Huffman et al., 2007) and Precipitation Estimation from
2342 Remotely Sensed Information using Artificial Neural Networks-Climate Data Record
2343 (PERSIANN-CDR; Nguyen et al., 2019) datasets (both at a coarser resolution of 0.25°), to
2344 find very similar results to those for CHIRPS; hence only the latter are shown.

2345

2346 ERA5 reanalyses (0.25° resolution) from the Copernicus (Copernicus Climate Change
2347 Service, 2017) were used to investigate circulation patterns and weather systems associated
2348 with extreme rainfall events. Atmospheric variables used included 500 and 850 hPa
2349 geopotential heights, wind fields, specific humidity and omega. National Oceanic and
2350 Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) interpolated outgoing longwave radiation (OLR) and
2351 South African Weather Service (SAWS) synoptic charts were also used. ERA5 reanalysis and

2352 OLR datasets are available from 1979 to near real time. In addition, 3-hourly Gridded
2353 Satellite (GridSat-B1) data (0.07° spatial resolution) (Knapp et al., 2011) were used for
2354 weather system identification.

2355
2356 The Niño 3.4 index, defined as the monthly average of the Sea Surface Temperature (SST)
2357 anomalies in the Central Pacific (5°N - 5°S ; 120° - 170°W), from NOAA Climate Prediction
2358 Centre (CPC) (Huang et al., 2021), was used for ENSO. For an index of the Botswana High,
2359 500 hPa geopotential height averaged over 19° - 23°S , 16° - 21°E (based on Driver and Reason,
2360 2017) was used. Positive (negative) anomalies of this index indicate a strong (weak)
2361 Botswana High. A stronger Botswana High implies more regional subsidence over much of
2362 southern Africa, and hence less convective rainfall (Reason, 2016). NOAA Optimally
2363 Interpolated SST data (Huang et al., 2021) (0.25° resolution) were used to assess SST
2364 patterns during the summer.

2365
2366 Data related to the impacts of the floods that occurred over Ngamiland during January-April
2367 (JFMA) 2017 were provided by the Botswana Disaster Management Office. Data download
2368 links are provided in the acknowledgments.

2369
2370 *5.2.2 Methods*

2371
2372 Extreme rainfall events were identified considering all grid-points with positive rainfall
2373 anomalies over the WCSA. A thorough method used to identify these events, which accounts
2374 for both event intensity and spatial extent, is discussed from the fourth paragraph of this
2375 section. While extreme rainfall events can often cover large areas such as the WCSA,
2376 attention was also paid to their spatial characteristics over two sections of the ORB. One is
2377 the Ngamiland district already mentioned and the other, referred to as north catchment, is that
2378 part of the ORB upstream of the Delta apex at Mohembo (18°S) (**Figure 5.1c**), where most of
2379 the ORB streamflow is generated (Andersson et al., 2003; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008;
2380 Moses et al., 2022). Downstream after Mohembo, the Okavango River feeds into the
2381 Okavango Delta located in Ngamiland. While the largest rainfall contributions to the
2382 streamflow occur over the north catchment, contributions over the Delta itself can be
2383 considerable, inducing flooding in well above average rainfall years (Andersson et al., 2003;
2384 Wolski et al., 2006; M. Murray-Hudson, personal communication, 2022). Hence, extreme

2385 rainfall events that cover either the north catchment or Ngamiland or both are examined
2386 below.

2387

2388 Two types of extreme rainfall events were considered; those accumulated over a 1-day (DP1)
2389 and those over a 3-day period (DP3). Note that extreme events accumulated over a 2-day
2390 period were very similar to the DP3 events, whereas those accumulated over 4-days or longer
2391 were rare and hence were not considered. It was of interest to consider extreme events that
2392 are common in the ORB since they are likely to contribute more to the streamflow and are
2393 also likely to be associated with most of the disasters.

2394

2395 Previous work over southern Africa (New et al., 2006) has used indices developed by the
2396 Expert Team on Climate Change Detection and Indices (ETCCDI; Zhang et al., 2011;
2397 Sillmann et al., 2013) based on the 95th percentile of precipitation, to assess extreme events.
2398 Indeed percentile-based indices are suitable for spatial comparisons of extremes (Zhang et al.,
2399 2011). While high-intensity rainfall events that are restricted to one or two grid-points can
2400 have impacts there, those with a larger spatial extent can affect a much greater area, hence
2401 accounting for both event intensity and spatial extent over large areas like the WCSA is
2402 important. For this reason, this study makes use of the method developed by Hart and Grumm
2403 (2001) and further adopted by Ramos et al. (2014, 2017, 2018) to rank extreme events based
2404 on both their intensity and their spatial extent. This method has been used successfully to
2405 study extreme rainfall events elsewhere in southern Africa such as the Limpopo region
2406 (Rapolaki et al., 2019) as well as in the Iberian Peninsula (Ramos et al., 2014, 2017, 2018).

2407

2408 Using this method of Ramos et al. (2014, 2017, 2018), DP1 and DP3 events were identified
2409 and ranked in three steps. The first step involved computation of the 95th percentile for each
2410 grid-point. To smooth the highly variable 95th percentile series, a 7-day running mean was
2411 applied. Then, extreme precipitation anomaly (N) for each grid-point was computed by
2412 subtracting the smoothed 95th percentile (μ) from daily precipitation totals (precip) using the
2413 equation

2414

$$2415 \quad N_{d,i,j} = precip_{d,i,j} - \mu_{d,i,j} \quad (5.1)$$

2416

2417 where subscripts d, i, j denote day d and grid point (i,j) . A day was taken to be an extreme
2418 day if at least one grid-point had a positive extreme rainfall anomaly.

2419

2420 The second step involved accumulation of rainfall anomalies for the DP3 events over each 3-
2421 day period. For example, the 3-day accumulated rainfall anomaly for 8 February 1981 was
2422 obtained by summing up the anomalies for 6-8 February 1981 (with event date being that of
2423 the last day of the 3-day period). To be considered as a single event, the associated rainfall
2424 anomaly for each day of the 3-day period had to be greater than zero.

2425

2426 The third step involved computation of anomalous magnitudes of both DP1 and DP3 events
2427 used to rank both events. The anomalous magnitude (R) of an extreme event was given by an
2428 index that was computed using the equation

2429

$$2430 \quad R = A \times M \quad (5.2)$$

2431

2432 where A is the area (in percentage) of grid-points with positive standardised rainfall
2433 anomalies and M is the average value of these positive anomalies. The DP1 event with the
2434 largest R was ranked number 1, and similarly for the DP3 events.

2435

2436 The dominant weather systems responsible for the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events were then
2437 identified. Rapolaki et al. (2019) similarly derived the top 200 daily extreme rainfall events
2438 over the Limpopo River basin, focusing only on DP1 events. Cloud bands were identified
2439 from reanalyses, satellite images and synoptic charts using the definition provided by
2440 Harrison (1986) and Kuhnel (1989), where these systems had to have their origin near the
2441 equator, and a northwest-southeast direction extending to the midlatitude southern Indian
2442 Ocean. Following Blamey and Reason (2012) and Morake et al. (2021) who used an adapted
2443 version of Maddox (1980) criteria for identifying Mesoscale Convective Complexes (MCCs,
2444 one of the most well-known type of MCSs), which, for example, identifies MCCs as systems
2445 that contain a cloud top temperature less than $-52\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, in this thesis MCSs were identified as
2446 follows. Cloud top temperature (brightness temperature) of the system had to be colder than -
2447 $52\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, the system had to last for more than three hours, and the rainfall produced by the
2448 system had to cover at least 100 km in a linear or quasi-circular pattern. Tropical lows were
2449 identified using the International Best Track Archive for Climate Stewardship (IBTrACS)
2450 dataset (Knapp et al., 2010).

2451

2452 Possible relationships between extreme rainfall events and climate modes (ENSO, Botswana
2453 High) were investigated using Pearson's product-moment correlation coefficient (r) at the 5%
2454 significance level ($\alpha = 0.05$). Other climate modes like the Southern Annular Mode, Benguela
2455 Niño and Angola Low were found to not have strong relationships with rainfall totals over
2456 the WCSA (Moses et al., 2022) or with the extreme rainfall events considered here. The not
2457 strong link with the Angola Low could be related to the fact that this circulation feature is
2458 strongest in January-February (Munday and Washington, 2017; Howard and Washington,
2459 2018) but here the correlations were computed for JFMA, which also contains March and
2460 April.

2461

2462 Frequency and intensity analysis of DP1 and DP3 events was performed, and trends in these
2463 extreme event characteristics were computed and tested for statistical significance at $\alpha = 0.05$,
2464 using the Hamed and Rao (1998) and Yue and Wang (2002) tests, which are both modified
2465 from the nonparametric Mann-Kendall test (MKT) (Mann, 1945; Kendall, 1975). The MKT
2466 is widely used because it does not make assumptions about the distribution of the data.
2467 However, the original MKT does not account for data autocorrelation, unlike the modified
2468 trend tests used here.

2469

2470 Focus here is placed on the late summer, i.e., JFMA, which is the peak of the rainfall season
2471 over this part of southern Africa. Note that the early summer, i.e., October-December (OND)
2472 had a small number of DP1 and DP3 (14 and 19, respectively) events making it into the top
2473 200 events when the entire October-April (ONDJFMA) season is used, hence results are only
2474 presented for JFMA 1981-2021. This concentration of extreme events in JFMA may result
2475 from the circulation over subtropical southern Africa being much more tropically influenced
2476 than in OND when midlatitude influences can still be significant (Walker, 1990; D'Abreton
2477 and Tyson, 1995, Cook et al., 2004; Dyson et al., 2015; Blamey et al., 2017). For context, in
2478 addition to the DP1 and DP3 events, the spatial distributions of rain-days receiving $>1\text{mm}$
2479 and $>10\text{ mm}$ as well as their trends are also considered.

2480

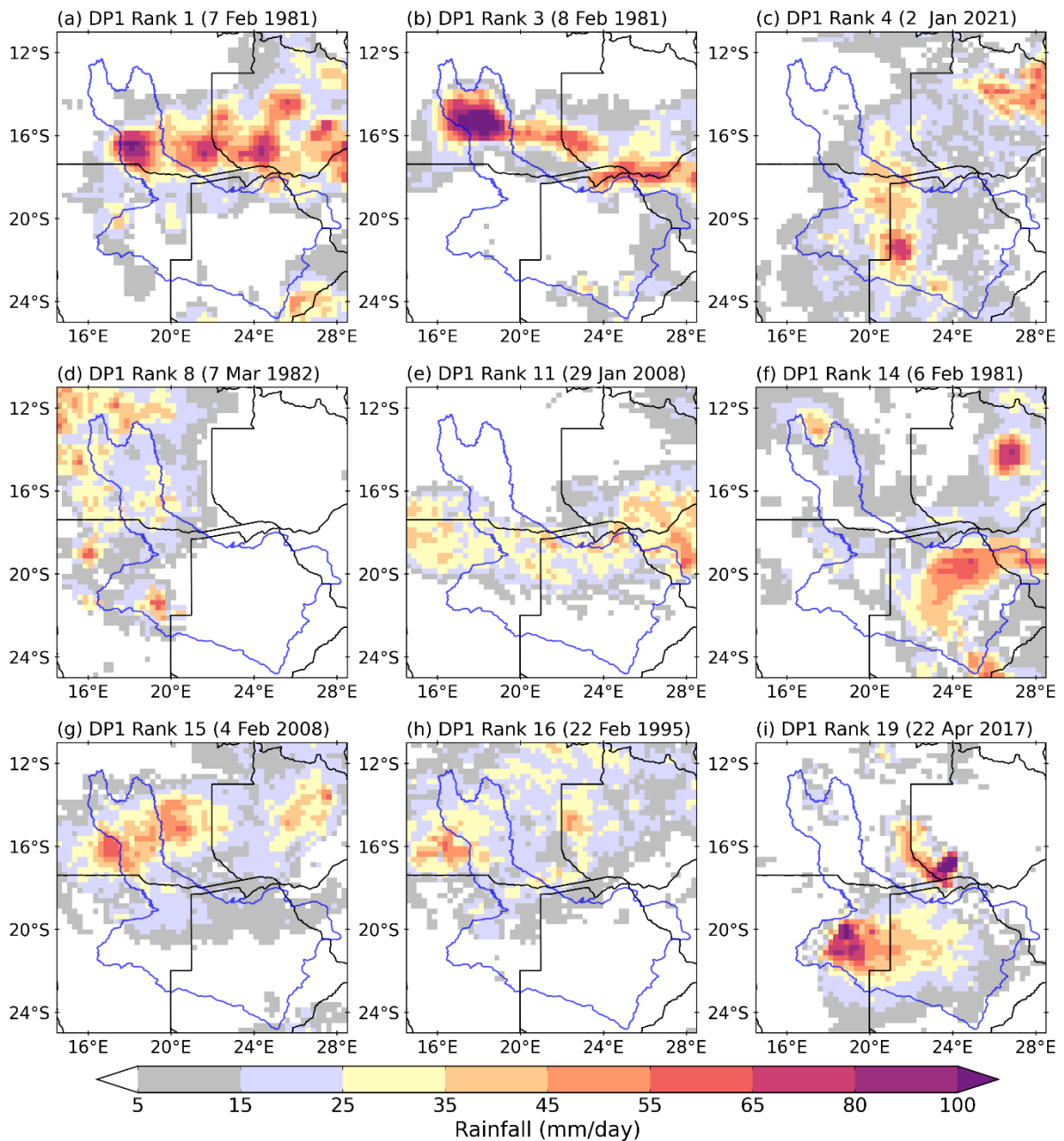
2481 **5.3 Results**

2482

2483 *5.3.1 Extreme events spatial distribution and weather types*

2484

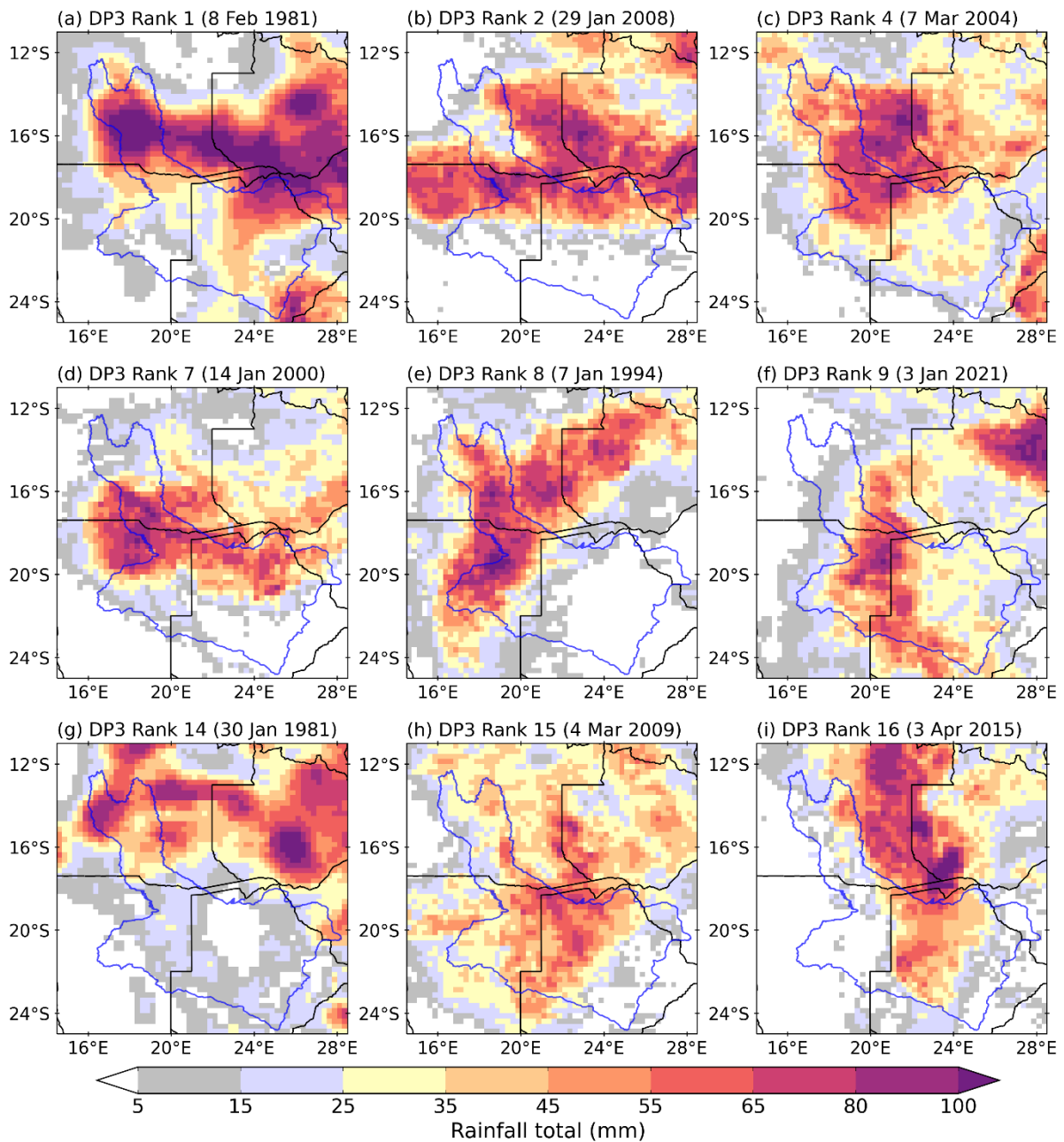
2485 **Figure 5.2** shows spatial distributions of the 9 out of the top 20 DP1 events that had their
2486 large rainfall values covering the north catchment and/or Ngamiland. In some cases, heavy
2487 rainfall is mainly restricted to the north catchment (e.g., plots a and b), in others it is more
2488 over Ngamiland (e.g., plots c and i) or else more patchily distributed. Four of the nine plots
2489 (**Figure 5.2a,b,g,h**) show that the heavy rainfall in the north catchment occurred in February,
2490 which, climatologically, is the month for the heavy rainfall in the north catchment. **Figure 5.3**
2491 shows the same information but for the DP3 events with again similar variations in relative
2492 distributions between the north catchment and Ngamiland. Very similar results are obtained if
2493 the extreme events are determined from PERSIANN-CDR or TRMM data (not shown)
2494 instead of CHIRPS, thereby giving some confidence in the results.
2495



2496

2497 **Figure 5.2** Spatial distribution of the 9 out of the top 20 DP1 events that had their large
 2498 rainfall values covering the north catchment and/or Ngamiland during JFMA 1981-2021. The
 2499 events are arranged in descending order of magnitude (defined in Equation 5.2) from (a) to
 2500 (i). Dates of the events are shown at the top of the panels. The blue polygon is as in Figure
 2501 5.1.

2502



2503

2504 **Figure 5.3** As in Figure 5.2, but for DP3 events.

2505

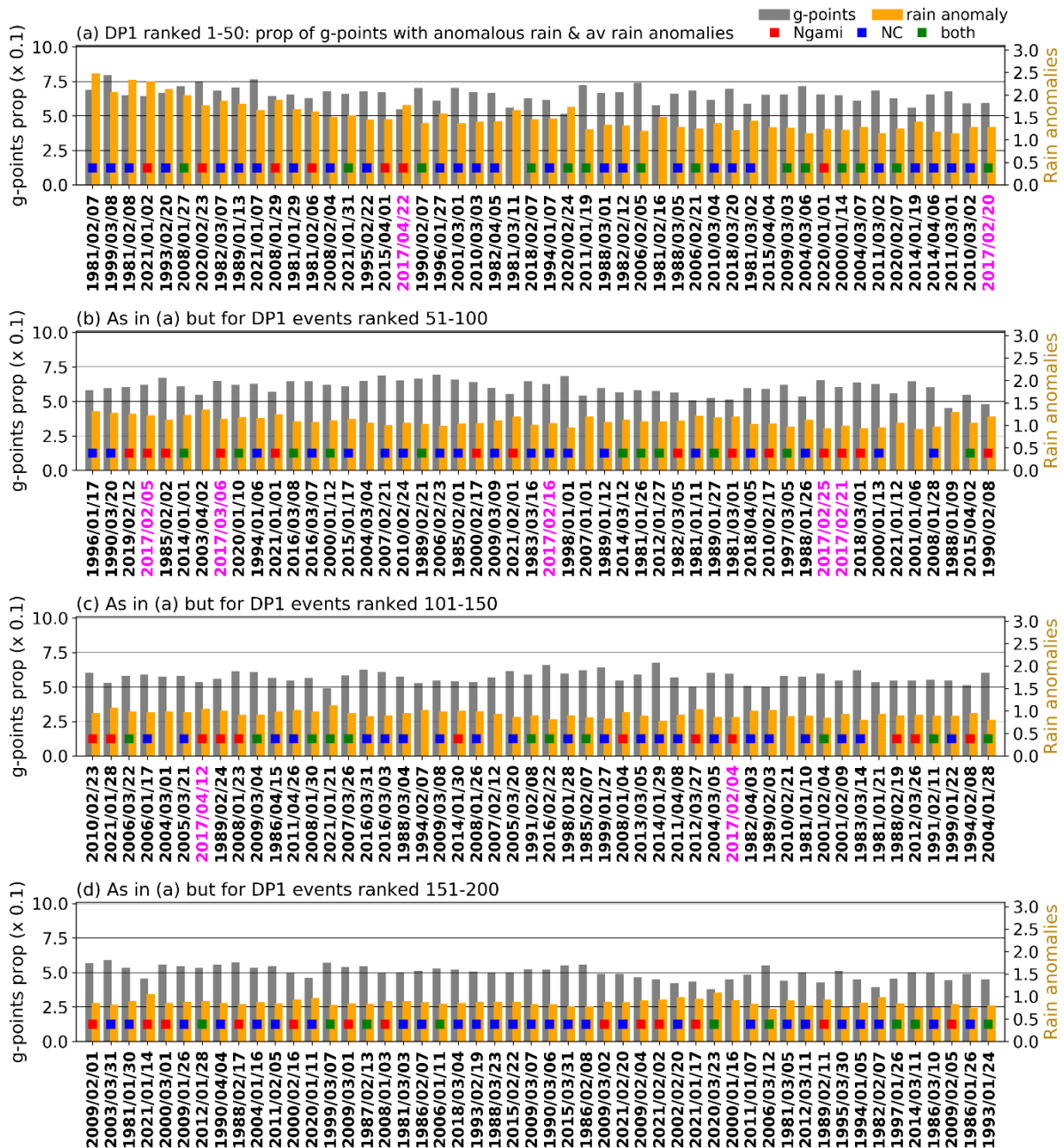
2506 **Figure 5.4** shows the proportion (denoted by bars) of grid-points over the WCSA with
 2507 positive standardised rainfall anomalies and the average values of these rainfall anomalies for
 2508 each of the DP1 events, with the top ranked plotted in the upper panel on the left through to
 2509 rank 200 on the bottom right of the lowest panel. The figure also shows the distribution of the
 2510 heavy rain of these events over the study domain using coloured squares, i.e., blue, red and
 2511 green squares on each bar in the figure are used to indicate whether the heavy rain of these
 2512 events fell over the north catchment, over Ngamiland, or over both areas, respectively. Note
 2513 that the dates in magenta colour are for the DP1 events that occurred during JFMA 2017,

2514 which are discussed further in *Section 5.4*. Out of the top 200, 94 had their heavy rain falling
2515 over the north catchment, 46 over Ngamiland, 45 over both regions, whereas the remaining
2516 15 events had their heavy rain falling mainly elsewhere in the WCSA. For the DP3 events,
2517 **Figure 5.5** shows the same information where it is found that 103 out of 200 cases had their
2518 heavy rain falling over the north catchment, 38 over Ngamiland, 55 over both regions, and
2519 only 4 mainly elsewhere in the WCSA box.

2520

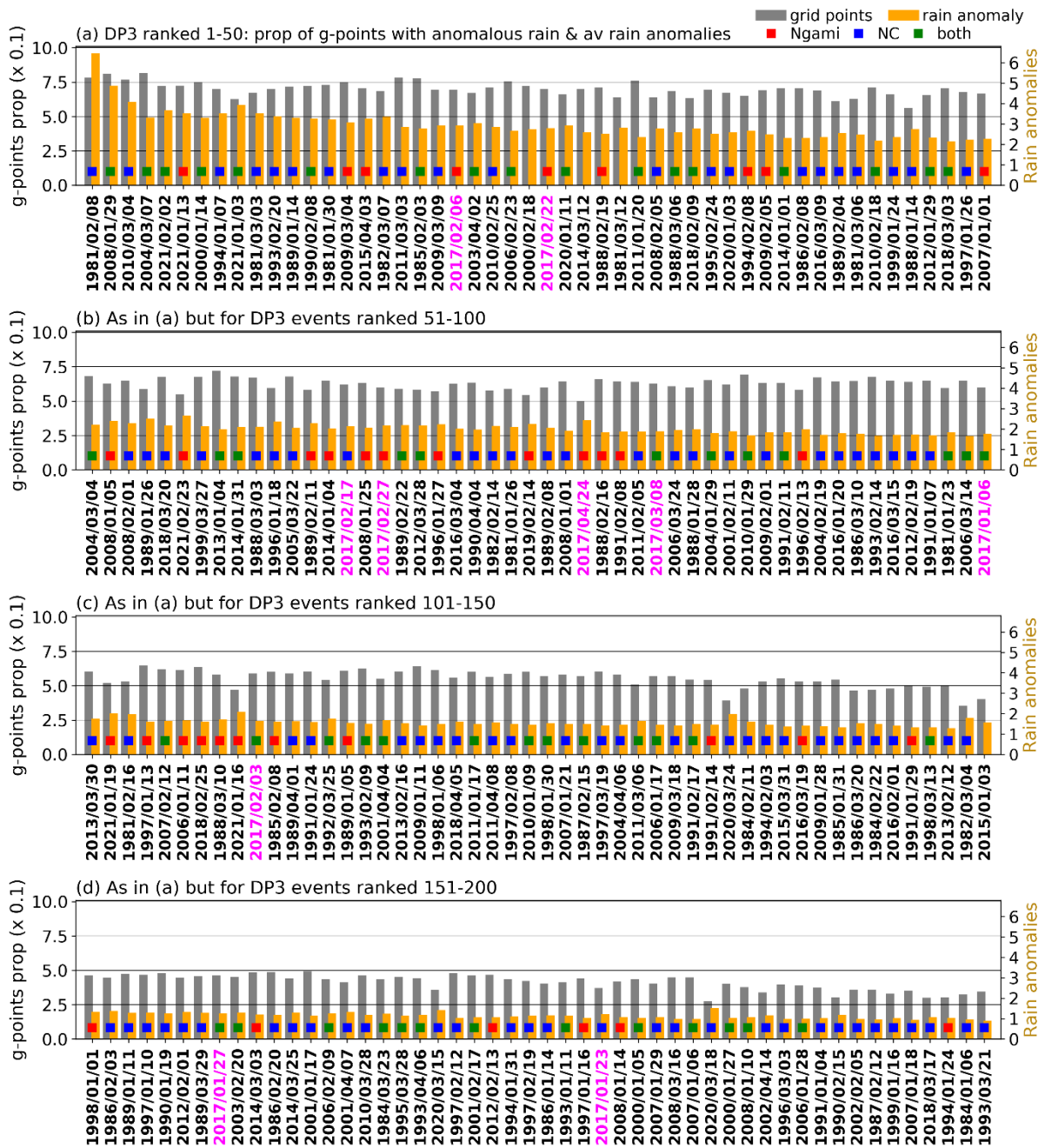
2521 Since the north catchment is lower latitude than Ngamiland as well as closer to the Angola
2522 Low and the Congo Air Boundary, it receives more rainfall on average (**Figures 5.1b** and
2523 **5.6a**); hence the greater numbers of DP1 and DP3 events falling over the north catchment are
2524 not unexpected. On average, the north catchment also experiences a greater number of rain-
2525 days receiving >1 mm, or >10 mm (**Figures 5.6c,e**). Like almost the entire subcontinent
2526 north of ~18°S, the north catchment experiences at least 40 rain-days (> 1 mm) during JFMA
2527 on average out of a maximum possible of 120. Similarly, most areas north of 18°S show at
2528 least 15 days of heavy rain (>10 mm) on average.

2529



2530

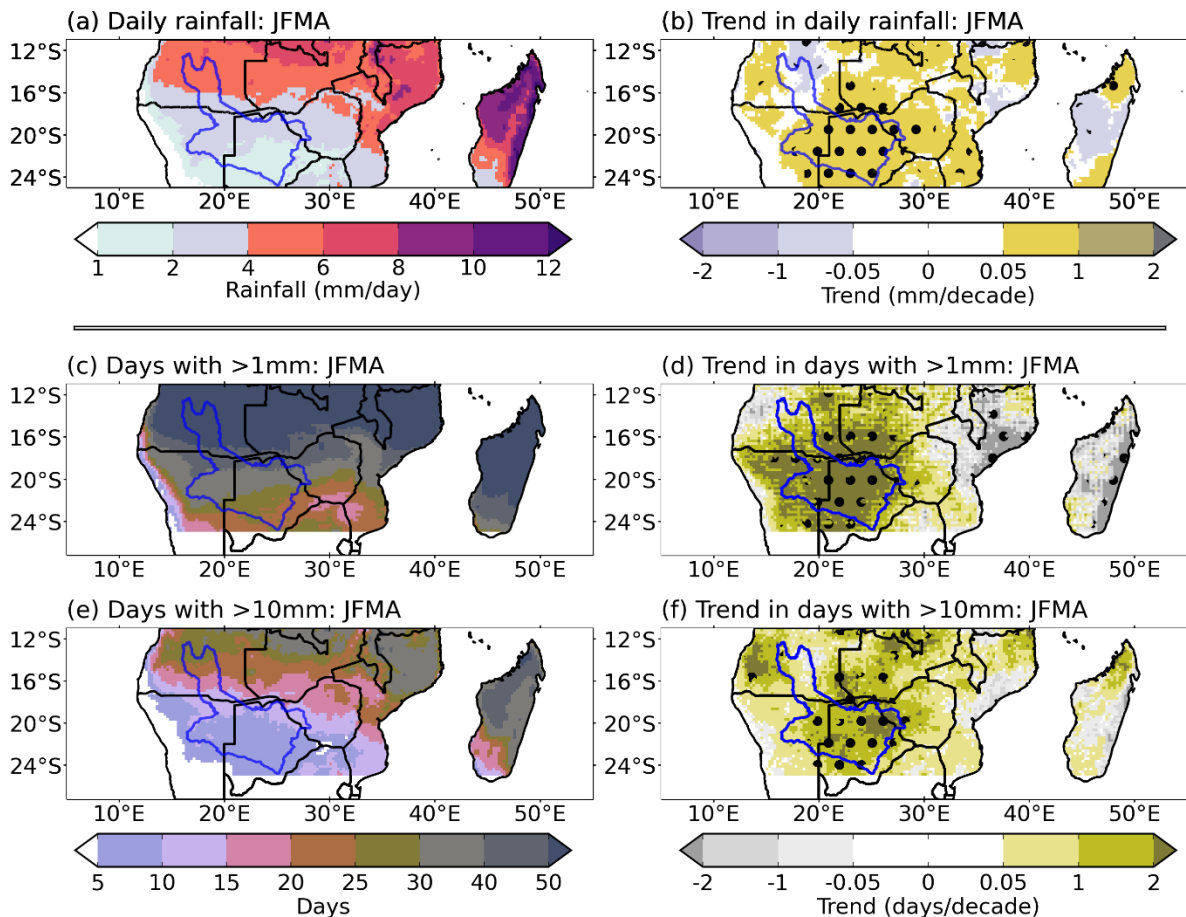
2531 **Figure 5.4** (a)-(d) Proportion (prop; denoted by bars) of grid-points (g-points) over the
 2532 WCSA with positive standardised rainfall anomalies and the average (av) values of these
 2533 rainfall anomalies, for the top 200 DP1 events during JFMA 1981-2021. The top ranked
 2534 event is plotted in the upper panel on the left through to rank 200 on the bottom right of the
 2535 lowest panel. Blue, red and green squares on each bar are used to indicate whether the heavy
 2536 rain of these events fell over the north catchment (NC), Ngamiland (Ngami) or over both
 2537 areas, respectively, whereas the bars with no squares on are used for the events whose heavy
 2538 rain did not fall on either of these 2 areas. Dates in magenta colour are for the events that
 2539 occurred during JFMA 2017.



2541

2542 **Figure 5.5** As in Figure 5.4 but for DP3 events.

2543



2544

2545 **Figure 5.6** (a) and (b) Mean daily rainfall and its spatial trends, respectively, in JFMA (1981-
 2546 2021), over tropical southern Africa. (c) and (e) Mean number of rain-days receiving >1 mm
 2547 and >10 mm, respectively. (d) and (f) Spatial trends for (c) and (e), respectively. Stippling in
 2548 (b), (d) and (f) denotes areas with significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in
 2549 Figure 5.1.

2550

2551 This 18°S latitude roughly marks the centre of the Angola Low in southern Angola/northern
 2552 Namibia and the poleward edge of the tropical rain belt extending east across the
 2553 subcontinent to the Mozambique Channel Trough (Barimalala et al., 2018, 2020). This
 2554 latitude also lies near the centre of the tropical edge over southern Africa, defined by Howard
 2555 et al. (2019) as the region spanning 12°-22°S, from the west to the east coast of the
 2556 subcontinent, which they found to be one of the regions of highest rainfall variability. Almost
 2557 all of Botswana (except the far south east) and a few adjacent areas in neighbouring
 2558 Zimbabwe and Namibia show significant trends in JFMA daily rainfall totals as well as in the
 2559 number of rain-days receiving >1 mm and >10 mm (**Figures 5.6b,d,f**). Thus, almost the
 2560 entire southern half of the WCSA shows a significant wetting trend in the second half of

2561 summer. It seems the Angola Low does not contribute much to the wetting trend since it
2562 shows a significant weakening trend (0.34 m/decade based on the 850 hPa geopotential
2563 height) at the 95% significance level. If the wetting trends persist into the future, then they
2564 imply a weakening of the meridional rainfall gradient from Botswana to Zambia and a
2565 blurring of the edge of the tropical rain-belt over northern Botswana at least. Similar trends in
2566 wet days of 10-30 mm/day were found for December-February by Thoithi et al. (2021).

2567
2568 Based on the identification methods described in *Section 5.2.2*, the dominant weather systems
2569 that resulted in the top 200 DP1 events (**Figure 5.4**) were tropical-extratropical cloud bands,
2570 which were associated with 112 events, followed by tropical lows (86), whereas 1 event was
2571 associated with a cut-off low and 1 with an MCS. Cloud band cases (not shown) tend to show
2572 more diagonally-oriented rainfall than the tropical low cases. However, MCSs can be
2573 embedded within other systems like cloud bands, hence their contribution to extreme rainfall
2574 events may be underestimated as noted by other studies (Blamey and Reason, 2013; Rapolaki
2575 et al., 2019). Furthermore, MCSs tend to be shorter-lived than cloud bands or tropical lows
2576 which may also lead to an underestimate of their relative contribution. For the top 200 DP3
2577 events (**Figure 5.5**), in cases where a single weather system was dominant on each day of the
2578 3-day period, 121 were associated with cloud bands and 74 with tropical lows. However,
2579 there are some DP3 cases where two weather systems were involved. Such cases include
2580 combinations of MCS-tropical low (1), MCS-cloud band (1) and tropical low-cloud band (3).

2581
2582 The importance of cloud bands for extreme rainfall events found here is consistent with other
2583 studies highlighting their large contribution to summer rainfall over subtropical southern
2584 Africa (Washington and Todd, 1999; Cook et al., 2004; Hart et al., 2010, 2013; Ratna et al.,
2585 2013; Manhique et al., 2011; Macron et al., 2014). That tropical lows also make a substantial
2586 contribution to WCSA extreme events is consistent with previous work for lower latitude
2587 southern Africa (Howard et al., 2019).

2588
2589 Some of the tropical lows identified here were associated with ex-tropical cyclones such as
2590 DP1 events ranked 72 (17 February 2000) due to ex-tropical cyclone Eline and DP3 event
2591 ranked 65 (15-17 February 2017) associated with ex-tropical cyclone (Dineo). The evolution
2592 and impacts of these ex-tropical cyclones over inland southern Africa have been previously
2593 studied (Reason and Keibel, 2004; Moses and Ramotonto, 2018).

2594

2595 5.3.2 Extreme events interannual variability and trends

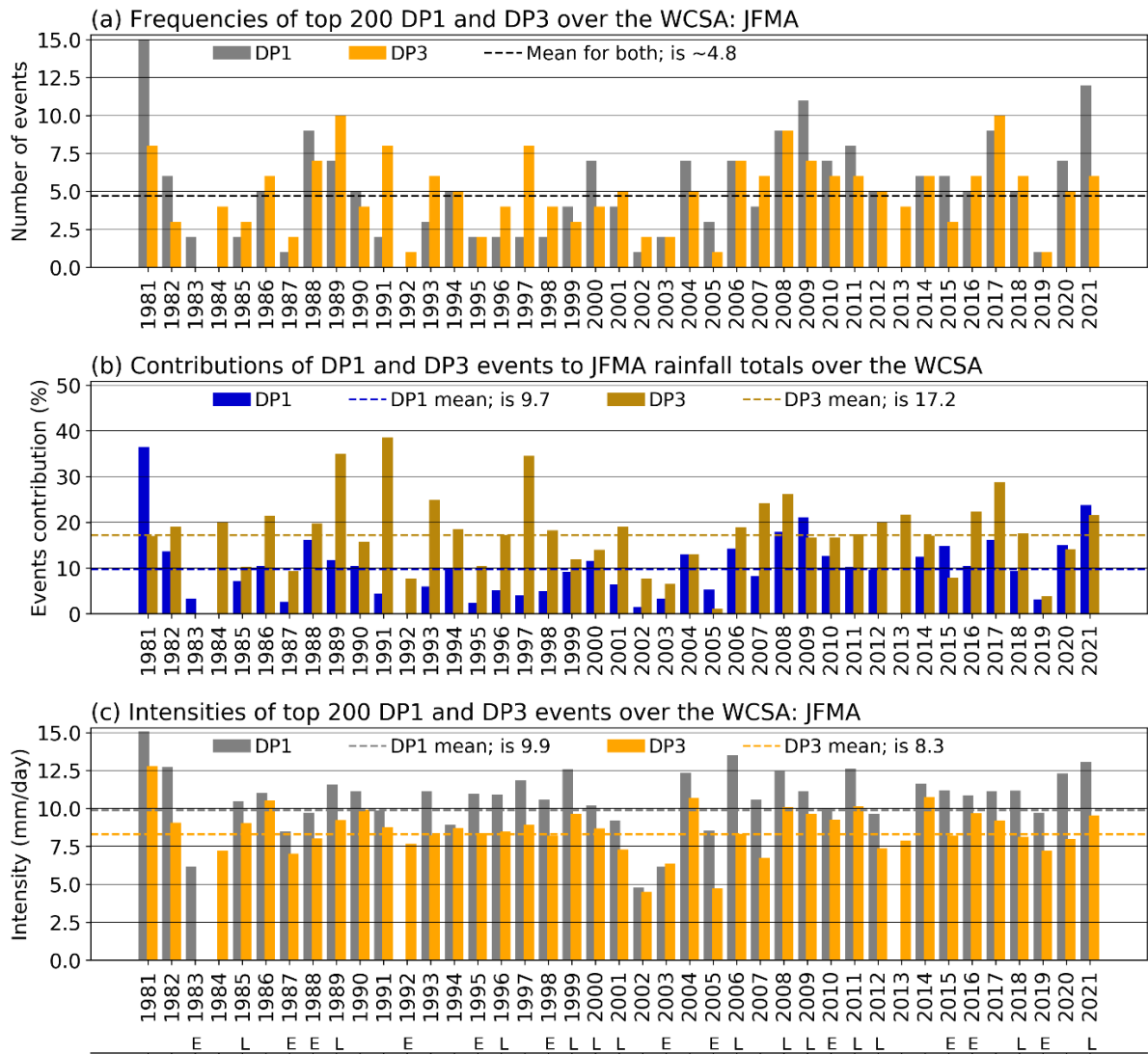
2596

2597 The top 200 DP1 and DP3 events show high interannual variability in their frequencies
2598 (**Figure 5.7a**) and percentage contribution to JFMA seasonal rainfall totals (**Figure 5.7b**)
2599 over the WCSA. Overall, DP3 events show larger contributions than DP1 events since their
2600 rainfall is accumulated over a longer (3 days) timespan than the latter (1 day). The largest
2601 DP3 contribution to seasonal rainfall totals occurred in 1991 (38.5%) whereas that for DP1
2602 events occurred in 1981 (36.5%). Throughout the 1981-2021 period, DP1 events made an
2603 average contribution of almost 10% and DP3 events 17% to JFMA rainfall totals,
2604 highlighting their importance for the climate of the region. However, the combined average
2605 contribution (27%) of these DP1 and DP3 events is less compared with other regions of the
2606 tropics/subtropics such as West Africa (3°N-16°N, 18°W-16°E), where the contribution of
2607 extreme rainfall events can reach ~50-90% in the northern part and ~30-50% in the south
2608 (Ta et al., 2016).

2609

2610 Out of these 41 seasons, **Figure 5.7a** shows that, 22 experienced above average frequencies
2611 in DP1 and 23 seasons experienced above average DP3 frequencies. Above average
2612 occurrences in DP1 and DP3 events mostly translate into above average rainfall since about
2613 80% of the seasons that experienced above average number of DP1 or DP3 events over the
2614 WCSA also received above average rainfall totals (**Figure 5.8a**). Over Ngamiland (**Figure**
2615 **5.8b**) and the north catchment (**Figure 5.8c**), the corresponding percentages are even lower at
2616 around 70% and 65% respectively. The higher percentage over Ngamiland than that over the
2617 north catchment suggests that extreme rainfall events make a somewhat larger contribution to
2618 rainfall totals over the former region.

2619



2620

2621 **Figure 5.7** (a) Frequencies of the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events over the WCSA, for JFMA

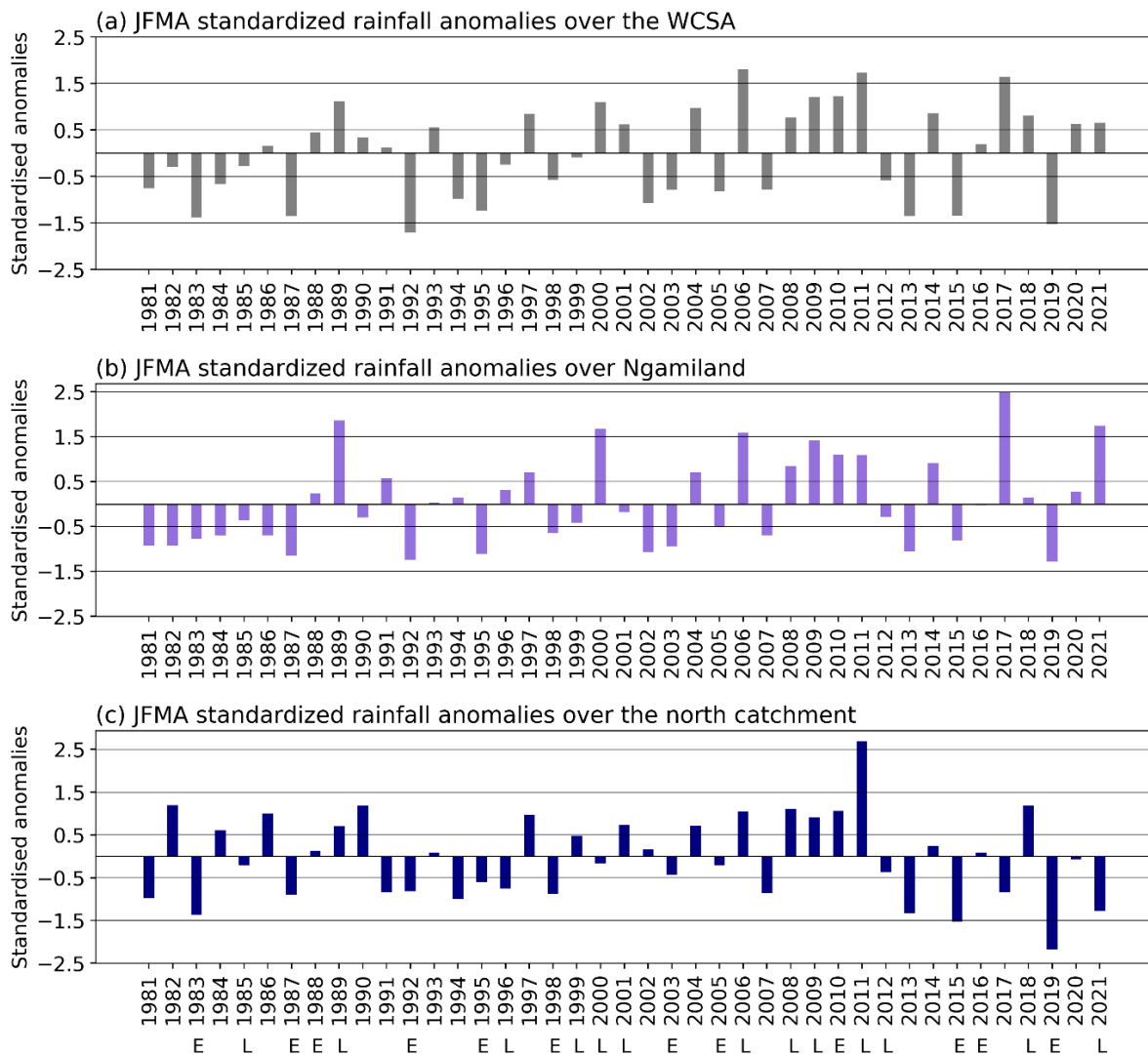
2622 1981-2021. (b) Percentage contribution of the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events to JFMA rainfall

2623 totals over the WCSA. (c) As in (a) but for Intensity-Max (as described in the text). Dashed

2624 lines are the means of the shown variables. Notation below the x axis in (c): E, El Niño; L, La

2625 Niña.

2626



2627
 2628 **Figure 5.8** (a) Standardised rainfall anomalies over the WCSA for JFMA 1981-2021. (b) As
 2629 in (a) but for Ngamiland. (c) As in (a) but for the north catchment. Notation below the x axis
 2630 in (c) is as in Figure 5.7c.

2631
 2632 Both DP1 and DP3 frequencies correlated significantly with WCSA rainfall totals ($r = 0.58$
 2633 and 0.73 , respectively, $p < 0.05$) and with Ngamiland rainfall totals ($r = 0.59$ and 0.72 ,
 2634 respectively, $p < 0.05$), whereas for the north catchment, only DP3 frequencies showed a
 2635 significant correlation with rainfall totals there ($r = 0.36$, $p < 0.05$) (**Table 5.1**). Note that
 2636 calculating these correlations using either rainfall totals or standardised rainfall anomalies
 2637 shown in **Figure 5.8** gave the same results. Rainfall totals over Ngamiland and the north
 2638 catchment are moderately but significantly correlated with each other ($r = 0.36$, $p < 0.05$)
 2639 although there are some obvious cases when they are out of phase such as in JFMA 2017, the
 2640 wettest season by far in Ngamiland but somewhat dry over the north catchment (**Figures**

2641 **5.8b,c).** Also, all of JFMA 1981-1987 was dry over Ngamiland whereas three of these
 2642 seasons showed well above average rainfall over the north catchment. Stronger correlations
 2643 exist between Ngamiland and WCSA rainfall totals ($r = 0.88$, $p < 0.05$), or between north
 2644 catchment and WCSA rainfall totals ($r = 0.68$, $p < 0.05$).

2645

2646 **Table 5.1** Correlations of DP1 and DP3 characteristics (frequencies and Intensity-Max) with
 2647 rainfall totals (for the WCSA, Ngamiland and north catchment), ENSO and the Botswana
 2648 High, over the period JFMA 1981-2021. Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

	DP1 frequency	DP3 frequency
WCSA rainfall totals	0.58	0.73
Ngamiland rainfall totals	0.59	0.72
north catchment rainfall totals		0.36
ENSO	-0.38	-0.44
Botswana High	-0.39	-0.46

	DP1 Intensity-Max	DP3 Intensity-Max
WCSA rainfall totals	0.55	0.48
Ngamiland rainfall totals	0.45	0.37
north catchment rainfall totals	0.34	
ENSO		-0.41
Botswana High	-0.33	-0.43

2649

2650 Events with the highest spatially averaged rainfall intensity (hereafter, Intensity-Max) over
 2651 the WCSA box in a particular season were derived for DP1 and DP3 (**Figure 5.7c**). This
 2652 parameter tends to be higher for DP1 (mean = 9.9 mm/day) than for DP3 (mean = 8.3
 2653 mm/day) events. This tendency suggests that there is a possibility for a DP1 event to have a
 2654 greater impact than a DP3 event in a particular location within the WCSA. As with
 2655 frequency, Intensity-Max of both DP1 and DP3 events correlated significantly with WCSA
 2656 rainfall totals ($r = 0.55$ and 0.48 , respectively, $p < 0.05$) and with Ngamiland rainfall totals (r
 2657 $= 0.45$ and 0.37 , respectively), but for the north catchment, only DP1 Intensity-Max
 2658 correlated significantly ($r = 0.34$, $p < 0.05$) (**Table 5.1**). Overall, correlations of both
 2659 frequency and Intensity-Max of DP1 and DP3 events with rainfall totals suggest that these
 2660 events are more important to seasonal rainfall totals over Ngamiland which receives smaller
 2661 rainfall totals than the north catchment.

2662

2663 Calculated for 1981-2021, a significant increasing trend was found in the DP1 frequency (0.9
2664 events/decade, $p < 0.05$), but none was found for the DP3 frequency, nor in the Intensity-Max
2665 of either type of event (**Figure 5.7c**). The significant increasing trend in DP1 frequency is
2666 consistent with the IPCC (2013) and (2021) reports which indicate that the frequency and
2667 intensity of extreme rainfall events is likely to increase due to global warming. If this DP1
2668 trend persists over the region, then there may be an increasing tendency for JFMA flooding
2669 with associated crop and livestock losses.

2670

2671 Since Moses et al. (2022) found that JFMA rainfall totals over the WCSA were significantly
2672 related to ENSO, it is worth considering potential ENSO relationships with DP1 and DP3
2673 events. **Figure 5.7** shows that 8 (9) out of 12 El Niño summers received below average DP1
2674 (DP3) frequencies. For La Niña, the corresponding numbers for average or above average are
2675 both 9 out of 13. Both DP1 and DP3 make their smallest (largest) contributions to seasonal
2676 rainfall totals mainly during El Niño (La Niña) summers (**Figure 5.7b**).

2677

2678 ENSO correlated significantly with frequencies of both DP1 and DP3 events ($r = -0.38$ and -
2679 0.44 , respectively, $p < 0.05$), whereas for Intensity-Max, only DP3 events correlated
2680 significantly ($r = -0.41$, $p < 0.05$) (**Table 5.1**). The significant correlation between ENSO and
2681 extreme event characteristics is consistent with JFMA being the season when this climate
2682 mode is generally fully developed and has its strongest impact over southern Africa
2683 (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018).
2684 Both DP1 and DP3 frequencies correlated significantly with the Botswana High ($r = -0.39$
2685 and -0.46 , respectively, $p < 0.05$) (**Table 5.1**). Similarly, the Botswana High was significantly
2686 correlated with Intensity-Max of both types of events ($r = -0.33$ and -0.43 , respectively, p
2687 < 0.05) (**Table 5.1**). Note that this mid-level Botswana High typically develops over southern
2688 Angola/northern Namibia in spring and then moves south and strengthens over central
2689 Namibia and western Botswana during summer (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017)
2690 leading to anomalous subsidence and reduced rainfall when it is stronger than average.
2691 Hence, the negative significant correlations between these extreme event characteristics and
2692 the Botswana High are consistent. Note also that when the ENSO influence was removed by
2693 partial correlation analysis, the correlation between DP1 (DP3) frequency and the Botswana
2694 High was -0.14 (-0.18), and that between DP1 (DP3) intensity and the Botswana High was -
2695 0.16 (-0.17), which are all nonsignificant.

2696

2697 **5.4 JFMA 2017 floods over Ngamiland**

2698

2699 As mentioned in the introduction, the Ngamiland district which contains the world-famous
2700 Okavango Delta experienced severe flooding in 2004, 2009, 2010, 2011 and 2017. **Figure**
2701 **5.8b** shows that JFMA 2017 was by far the wettest season (2.5 standard deviations) over
2702 Ngamiland during 1981-2021 as well as third wettest over the WCSA box as a whole (**Figure**
2703 **5.8a**). It is also of interest because it is neutral with respect to ENSO unlike 2009 and 2011
2704 which were La Niña when subtropical southern Africa is expected to be wet (Lindesay, 1988;
2705 Reason et al., 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005). Other JFMA seasons with well above
2706 average rainfall over Ngamiland (1989, 2000, 2006 and 2021) are also all La Niña summers,
2707 but there were no records of local floods over this region. In addition, JFMA 2017 is a season
2708 which experienced well below average JFMA rainfall over the north catchment (**Figure**
2709 **5.8c**), implying that the Ngamiland floods then were mainly due to rainfall over the district
2710 itself, with little contribution from upstream river flow during JFMA. Most of the river flow
2711 that feeds into the Okavango Delta is generated over the north catchment. Indeed,
2712 examination of river discharge data from Mohembo (not shown) on the northern border of
2713 Ngamiland shows that the river flow there only noticeably increased after mid-January 2017
2714 since the rainfall anomalies for OND 2016 (not shown) were only slightly above average over
2715 the north catchment. Thus, the importance of local rainfall in causing the JFMA 2017 floods
2716 over Ngamiland is evident.

2717

2718 Before analysing the circulation patterns associated with the JFMA floods, it is useful to
2719 consider the timing of the rains during this anomalously wet season over Ngamiland.
2720 Anomalously wet summer rainy seasons in other parts of southern Africa often result from
2721 one or two intense spells of rain rather than frequent but less intense rain events. For
2722 example, this was the case in 2006 in Tanzania (Kijazi and Reason, 2009) and western
2723 Namibia (Muller et al., 2008), 2011 in southern Mozambique/northeastern South Africa
2724 (Manhique et al., 2015; Rapolaki et al., 2021), and most recently (April 2022) in Kwa-Zulu
2725 Natal, South Africa. These, and other cases, highlight the need to better understand the
2726 contributions of extreme rainfall events to anomalously wet summers.

2727

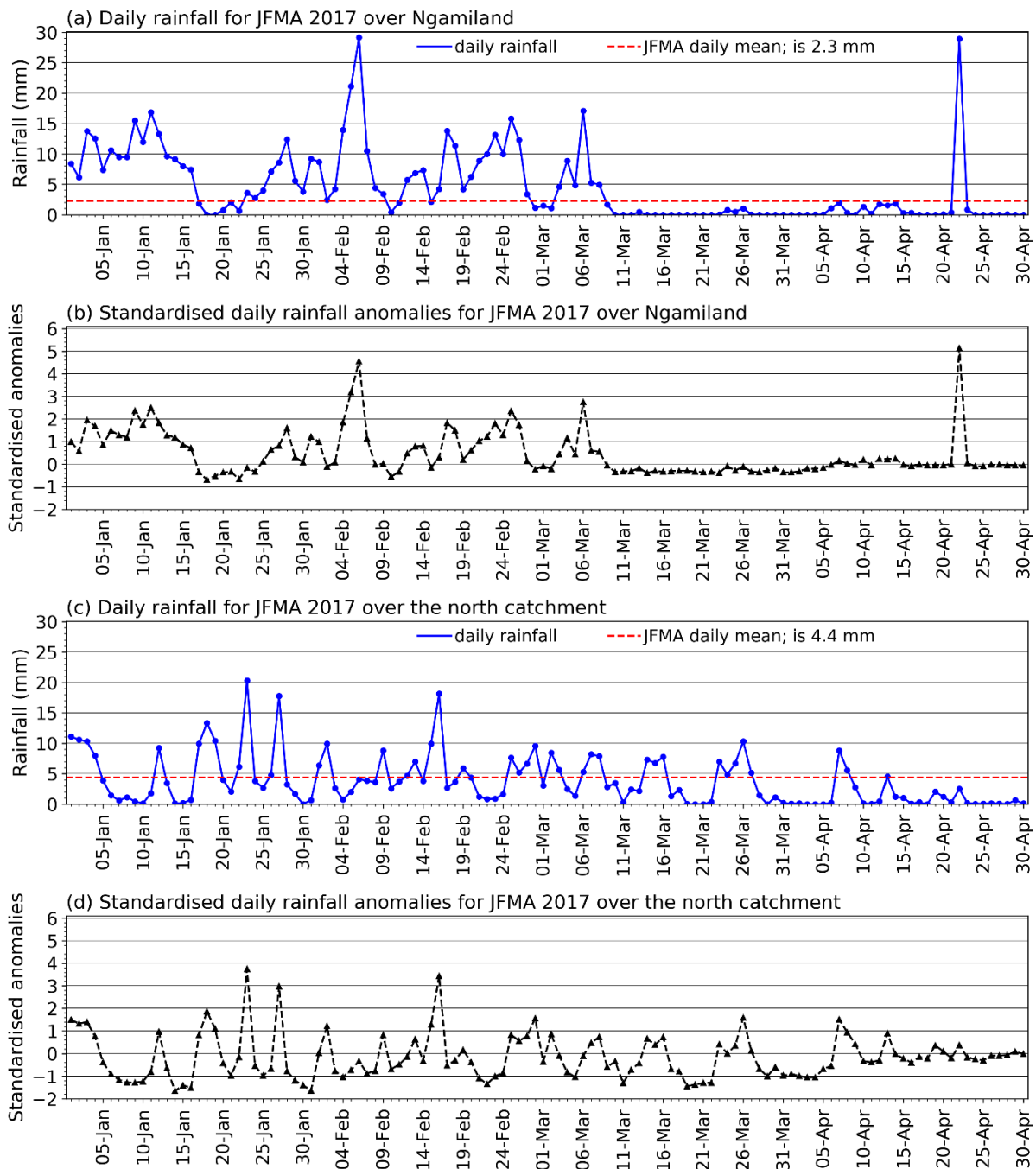
2728 **Figure 5.7a** shows that JFMA 2017 experienced the highest number (10) of DP3 events over
2729 the WCSA box as well as the fourth highest number of DP1 events during 1981-2021. For
2730 Ngamiland, **Figures 4** and **5** indicate that there were 8 (8) DP1 (DP3) events, which is well

2731 above average (**Figure 5.7a**). On the other hand, Intensity-Max values of these events during
2732 JFMA 2017 were only slightly above average over the whole of the WCSA (**Figure 5.7c**),
2733 whereas over Ngamiland itself, Intensity-Max values were 2.6 and 2.3 for DP1 and DP3,
2734 respectively (figure not shown) times higher than those shown in **Figure 5.7c**. Also, the
2735 spatially averaged intensities for the events that occurred during this season were
2736 considerably higher over Ngamiland (13.1 and 9.0 mm/day for DP1 and DP3 events,
2737 respectively) than over the north catchment (4.7 and 5.8 mm/day, for DP1 and DP3 events,
2738 respectively) where most of the ORB streamflow is generated as mentioned. Taken together,
2739 **Figures 5.4, 5.5 and 5.8b** indicate that the joint percentage contribution of DP1 and DP3
2740 events to the JFMA 2017 rainfall total over the WCSA was ~45%, whereas over Ngamiland
2741 itself, this contribution was 21% and 27% for DP1 and DP3 events, respectively (figure not
2742 shown), or 48% jointly. These percentage contributions imply that the remaining rain-days of
2743 the season must also have had some other substantial rainfall events over Ngamiland.

2744

2745 Daily rainfall and their anomalies from 1981-2021 climatology averaged over Ngamiland and
2746 the north catchment are shown in **Figure 5.9**. This figure shows that just over the first two
2747 months of the season were extremely wet over Ngamiland followed by a long dry period
2748 before the second most intense wet spell of the season on 22 April which experienced an
2749 average value of 29 mm (6 February also received 29 mm and the preceding day 21 mm). On
2750 the other hand, the north catchment experienced more regular but less intense wet spells
2751 during JFMA 2017 as well as numerous rather dry periods, leading to below average summer
2752 totals for this area. It experienced only 11 days receiving at least 10 mm which is well below
2753 average (**Figure 5.6e**). By contrast, Ngamiland whose daily average summer rainfall is about
2754 half of that in the north catchment (red dashed lines in **Figures 5.9a,c**) experienced 21 rain-
2755 days >10 mm which is about double the average (**Figure 5.6e**). Almost all of these heavy
2756 rain-days over Ngamiland occurred in January (8) and February (11). Since there were very
2757 few no-rain days in Ngamiland before the second week of March, these initial two months of
2758 heavy rainfall saturated the soils thereby causing the flooding. It is worth noting that records
2759 related to the impacts of the floods that occurred over Ngamiland during the season of
2760 interest do not specify the exact month in which those floods occurred, but they are reported
2761 just as JFMA 2017 floods.

2762



2763

2764 **Figure 5.9** (a) Daily rainfall totals for JFMA 2017 averaged over Ngamiland. The red dashed
 2765 line is the mean (1981-2021) daily rainfall averaged over JFMA, for Ngamiland. (b)
 2766 Standardised daily rainfall anomalies for the series in (a), computed by subtracting long-term
 2767 mean rainfall (1981-2021) of JFMA days from the corresponding JFMA 2017 daily rainfall
 2768 totals. (c) and (d) are as in (a) and (b), respectively, but for the north catchment.

2769

2770 Although the period after March 10 was characterised by relatively few rain-days of which all
 2771 but one were of low intensity, the exceptionally wet day of 22 April (~5 standard deviations)
 2772 may have exacerbated and prolonged the floods. Occurring so late in the season, this case is a

2773 reminder that many studies as well as seasonal forecasting practices which often consider
2774 April to be outside the core rainy season, can quite often miss very significant rainfall in
2775 some years, and hence such practice should be viewed with caution.

2776

2777 Given the daily distribution of rainfall during the JFMA 2017 floods over Ngamiland shown
2778 in **Figure 5.9a**, the associated circulation anomalies are separately analysed for the long-wet
2779 period of 1 January – 8 March, and then the synoptic scale period 21-23 April. The second
2780 most intense wet day of 22 April corresponds to DP1 ranked 18 in the top 200 events in the
2781 WCSA box (**Figure 5.4a**) and, unusually, was a cut-off low. Most of the other 9 DP1 events
2782 in the top 200 over the WCSA during JFMA 2017 resulted from cloud bands with 3 due to
2783 tropical lows. The DP3 events during this season were equally induced by cloud bands and
2784 tropical lows.

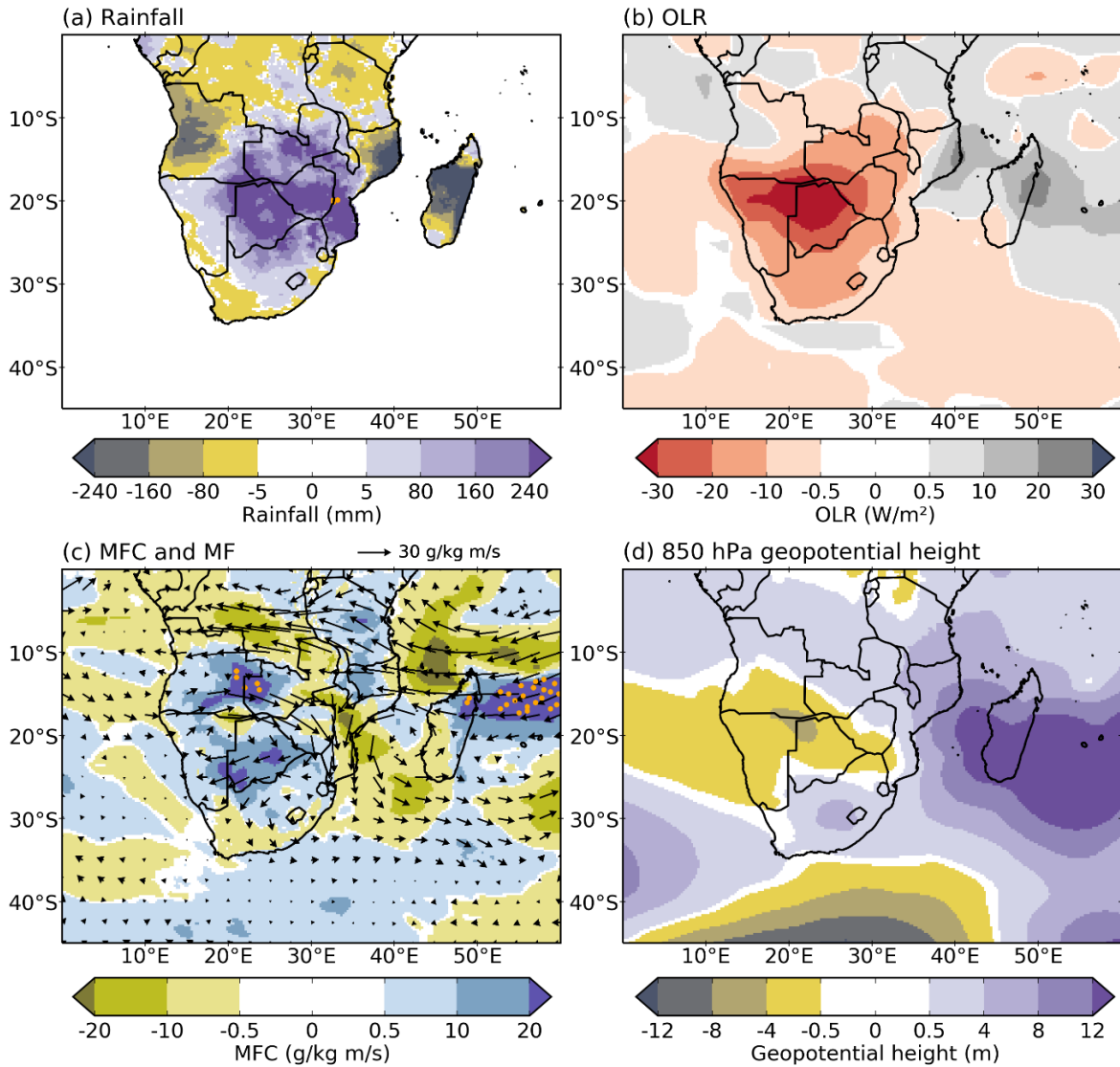
2785

2786 *5.4.1 January-early March 2017 wet period*

2787

2788 **Figures 5.10** and **5.11** show large-scale circulation anomalies over the southern African
2789 region for the 1 January – 8 March 2017 period. In addition to Ngamiland, most of Botswana,
2790 southern Zambia, Zimbabwe and central Mozambique experienced a very wet JFMA 2017
2791 while most of Angola (including the northern half of the north catchment), the Democratic
2792 Republic of Congo, northern Mozambique and Tanzania were very dry (**Figure 5.10a**). OLR
2793 anomalies suggest that most of Botswana as well as northeastern Namibia experienced
2794 anomalous convective cloud conditions during this period (**Figure 5.10b**), consistent with the
2795 heavy rainfall and few non-rain days over Ngamiland (**Figure 5.9a**). This OLR anomaly
2796 pattern together with the strong cyclonic anomaly centred over the Angola/Namibia eastern
2797 border region (**Figure 5.10d**) indicate that the Angola Low was anomalously strong during
2798 JFMA 2017. The Angola Low acts as the tropical source for the cloud bands that bring most
2799 of the summer rainfall over subtropical southern Africa (Cook et al., 2004; Hart et al., 2010,
2800 2013) and indeed many of the DP1 and DP3 events during this season resulted from cloud
2801 bands. This anomalously strong Angola Low was associated with enhanced westerly moisture
2802 transport from the tropical southeast Atlantic (**Figure 5.10c**), one of the important moisture
2803 sources for southern Africa (Cook et al., 2004; Rapolaki et al., 2020). Summers with
2804 increased moisture transport from this source are typically also very wet over northern and
2805 central South Africa, as is also seen in JFMA 2017 (**Figure 5.10a**).

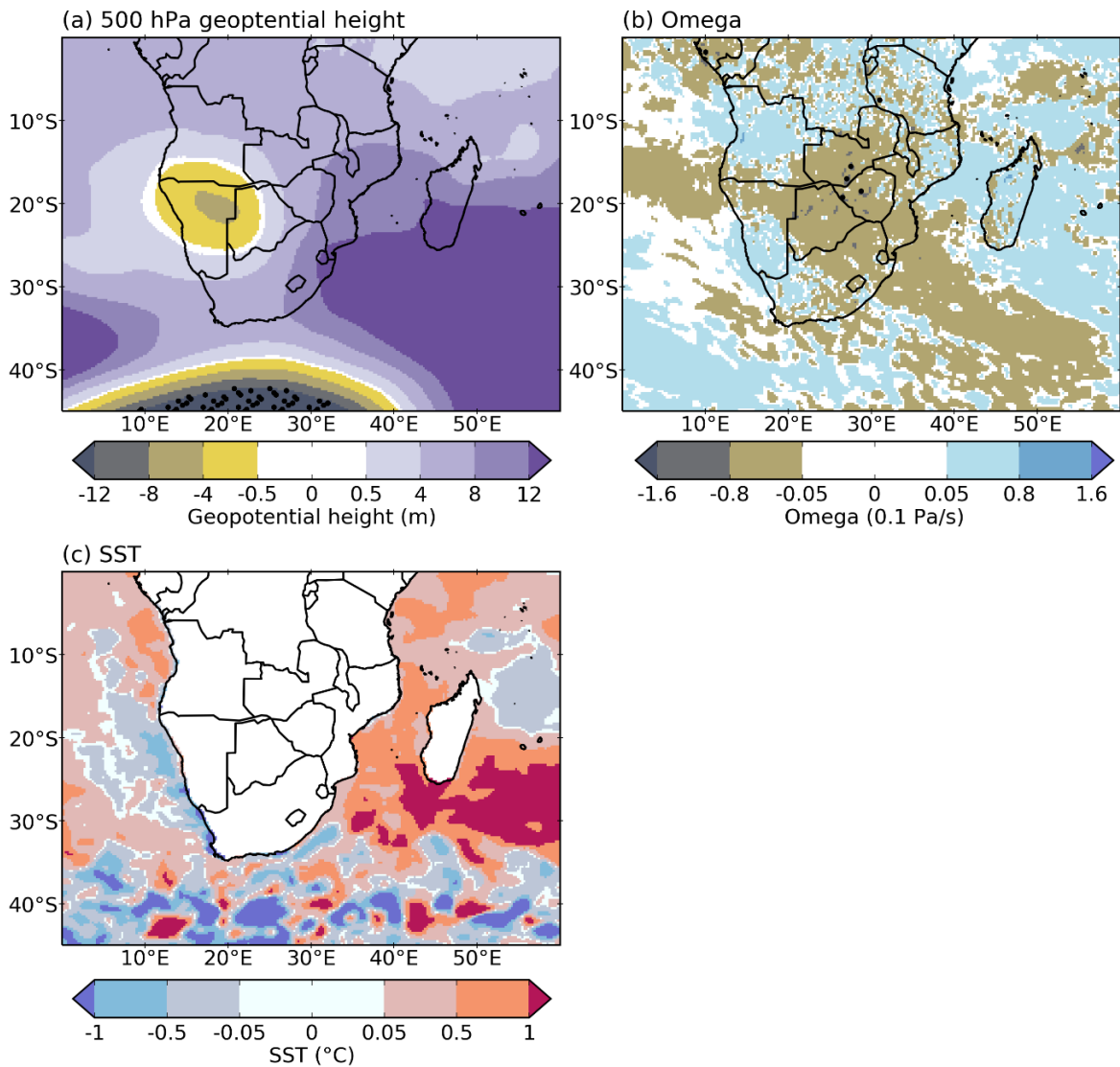
2806



2807

2808 **Figure 5.10** Circulation anomalies for 1 January - 8 March 2017 with respect to 1981-2021
 2809 climatology, over southern Africa. (a), (b), (c) and (d) show anomalies of rainfall, OLR, 850
 2810 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC; shading) and moisture flux (MF; vectors), and 850 hPa
 2811 geopotential height, respectively. Areas with statistically significant anomalies based on
 2812 bootstrap 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling.

2813



2814

2815 **Figure 5.11** As in Figure 5.10 but for (a) 500 hPa geopotential height, (b) 500 hPa omega and
 2816 (c) SST.

2817

2818 Over Ngamiland itself as well as Botswana, Zimbabwe and southern Mozambique, the strong
 2819 cyclonic moisture flux anomalies (**Figure 5.10c**), together with the easterly export of
 2820 moisture across southern Africa from the western Indian Ocean, leading to strong low-level
 2821 moisture flux convergence over most of Botswana, favoured the very wet conditions. Over
 2822 the Mozambique Channel, anticyclonic moisture flux anomalies occurred, suggesting that the
 2823 Mozambique Channel Trough was weaker than normal, hence more moisture was transported
 2824 from the southwest Indian Ocean into the southern Africa landmass mainly through Eswatini
 2825 (**Figures 2.1 and 5.10c**) and the surrounding areas rather than circulating in the Channel
 2826 itself (Barimalala et al., 2018, 2020). This low-level moisture then converged over Botswana
 2827 leading to the floods over Ngamiland. Low-level moisture flux convergence anomalies

2828 appear to have been relatively lower over Ngamiland itself (vertical integration of the
2829 anomalies from 850 hPa to 200 hPa did not substantially improve the lower anomaly values)
2830 over the period as a whole. However, daily values of these fluxes at 850 hPa were very high
2831 (not shown) over this area during the heavy wet spells (such as 6 February in **Figure 5.9a**).

2832

2833 Another very favourable feature for the very wet period over Botswana was the weaker mid-
2834 level Botswana High (**Figure 5.11a**). This feature, together with the northwest-southeast
2835 band of increased uplift stretching from northeastern Namibia/southern Angola across
2836 Botswana to the southwest Indian Ocean as well as the enhanced troughing south of South
2837 Africa (**Figure 5.11b**), implies favourable conditions for deep convection and strong cloud
2838 bands leading to the wet conditions over Botswana, Zimbabwe and most of South Africa
2839 shown in **Figure 5.10a**. SST anomalies in the southwest Indian Ocean were strongly positive
2840 in many areas (**Figure 5.11c**) but negative near western Australia in a subtropical Indian
2841 Ocean Dipole-like pattern which has previously been associated with above average summer
2842 rainfall in eastern South Africa, Botswana and Zimbabwe (Reason and Mulenga, 1999;
2843 Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Reason, 2001a) since they increase the moisture content of the
2844 easterly flow towards the subcontinent.

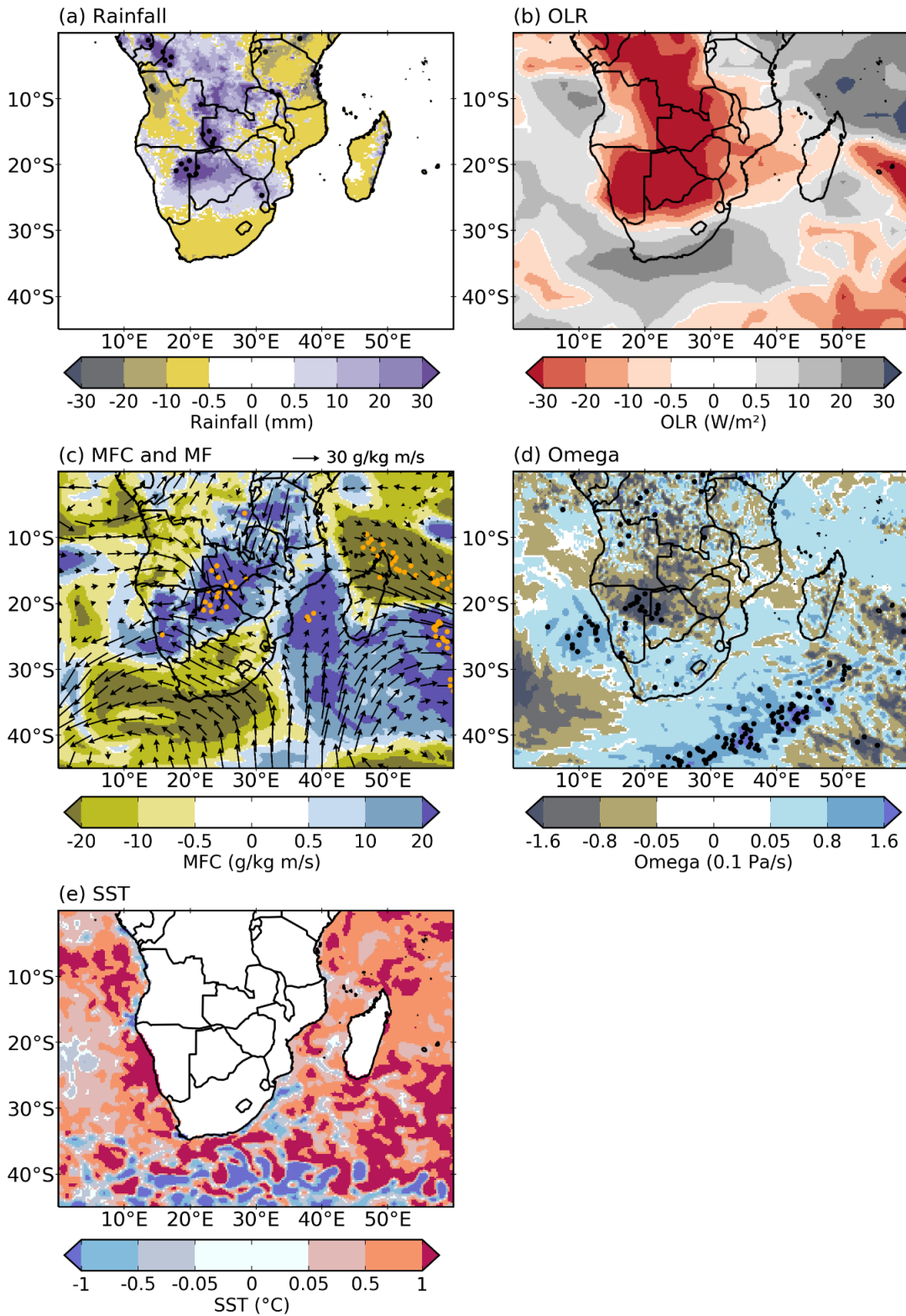
2845

2846 *5.4.2 Synoptic wet spell 21-23 April 2017*

2847

2848 Examination of South African Weather Service synoptic charts together with ERA5 500 hPa
2849 geopotential height and 250 hPa winds for 17-23 April 2017 (not shown) indicate that during
2850 this period a cut-off low situated rather far north over the ocean west of Namibia became
2851 centred over the central Namibian coast on the very wet day (22 April) while near the surface
2852 there was a surface trough over Botswana and a strong midlatitude cyclone east of South
2853 Africa. The latter can be clearly seen in the low-level moisture flux anomalies for 21-23 April
2854 2017 (**Figure 5.12c**), which also shows strong easterly/northeasterly fluxes into Ngamiland
2855 and most of Botswana together with strong moisture convergence.

2856



2857

2858 **Figure 5.12** Circulation anomalies for 21-23 April 2017, with respect to 1981-2021
 2859 climatology, over southern Africa. The fields and stippling are as described in Figures 5.10
 2860 and 5.11, with the variables in (c) and (d) measured at 850 hPa and 500 hPa, respectively.
 2861

2862 As in the case for the 1 January – 8 March 2017 period, highest positive rainfall anomalies
2863 during 21-23 April 2017 also occurred over Ngamiland and northern Botswana/eastern
2864 Namibia, but during the latter they extended northward along Angola/Zambia border (**Figure**
2865 **5.12a**), consistent with the lowest negative OLR anomalies (**Figure 5.12b**). Off the coast of
2866 Namibia, westerly moisture fluxes are apparent (**Figure 5.12c**), which together with
2867 anomalously warm water there (**Figure 5.12e**) suggest that they were favourable for
2868 increased moisture convergence over the Ngamiland region. Warm SST anomalies persisted
2869 over the southwest Indian Ocean (**Figure 5.12e**) in an ongoing subtropical dipole-like pattern,
2870 favourable for wet conditions. **Figure 5.12d** shows strong uplift centred over northeastern
2871 Namibia/northwestern Botswana during 21-23 April consistent with the very heavy rainfall
2872 on the 22nd of this month. As with the 1 January-March 8 period, westerly moisture fluxes
2873 over the tropical southeast Atlantic played an important role in the very heavy rainfall on 22
2874 April. However, the latter period was characterised by a cut-off low located rather far north
2875 whereas the heavy rain earlier in the summer resulted from cloud bands and tropical lows.

2876

2877 Note that *Sections 5.4.1* (January-early March 2017 wet period) and *5.4.2* (synoptic wet spell
2878 21-23 April 2017) show that physical processes (stronger Angola Low, weaker Botswana
2879 High, weaker Mozambique Channel Trough) underlie the 2017 floods over Ngamiland which
2880 are not associated with ENSO. These atmospheric variability without ENSO forcing could be
2881 related to the fact that SST patterns in the surrounding Indian and Atlantic Oceans may
2882 influence the circulation and rainfall patterns over southern Africa either both partially
2883 dependent on ENSO (Goddard and Graham, 1999; Hoell et al., 2015), or independent of
2884 ENSO (Reason, 2001a; Washington and Preston, 2006), and may also reinforce or oppose
2885 ENSO impacts (Reason and Smart, 2015; Hoell et al., 2017).

2886

2887 **5.5 Discussion and conclusions**

2888

2889 This study has analysed characteristics of extreme rainfall events accumulated over 1-day
2890 (DP1) and 3-day (DP3) periods in the Okavango River Basin (ORB) in Western Central
2891 Southern Africa (WCSA), for January-April (JFMA), 1981-2021. These characteristics
2892 include frequencies, intensities [highest spatially averaged rainfall intensity (here, referred to
2893 as Intensity-Max) in a particular season], spatial distributions, variability and trends. The
2894 most important weather systems driving these events have been identified, contributions of

2895 these events to JFMA rainfall totals have been examined, as well as factors that might have
2896 contributed to the severe floods that occurred over Ngamiland during the ENSO-neutral
2897 JFMA 2017.

2898
2899 Consistent with the IPCC (2013) and (2021) assessments that the frequency and intensity of
2900 extreme rainfall events is likely to increase due to global warming, a significant increasing
2901 trend was found in the DP1 frequency over the period 1981-2021. This trend, if it persists,
2902 may increase the tendency for JFMA flooding with associated crop and livestock losses.
2903 Positive significant trends were also found in JFMA daily rainfall totals and in rain-days
2904 receiving >1 mm and >10 mm, over the southern half of the WCSA as well as adjacent areas
2905 in Namibia, South Africa, Zimbabwe and Zambia. The implication of these trends if they
2906 persist into the future is that there may be a weakening of the meridional rainfall gradient
2907 from Botswana to Zambia and fading of the edge of the tropical rain-belt over northern
2908 Botswana. These trends compare well with trends in wet days of 10-30 mm/day found for
2909 December-February by Thoithi et al. (2021), and with an increase in average daily rainfall
2910 found by New et al. (2006).

2911
2912 DP1 and DP3 events show large interannual variability in their frequencies and percentage
2913 contributions to JFMA seasonal rainfall totals. While on average DP1 (DP3) events
2914 contribute ~10% (17%) to JFMA rainfall totals, in some years their contributions reach above
2915 30% over the WCSA. The size of these contributions to seasonal rainfall totals shows that
2916 they play an important role in the regional climate. However, although these extreme rainfall
2917 events make substantial contributions to water resources, they also have the potential to cause
2918 local flooding and significant damage to crops and human settlements.

2919
2920 Consistent with the fact that most of the ORB streamflow is generated over the north
2921 catchment (Andersson et al., 2003; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008; Moses et al., 2022), it
2922 has been found here that DP1 and DP3 events over the WCSA drop more of their heavy
2923 rainfall over the north catchment than Ngamiland. This result is also consistent with the
2924 spatial distributions of JFMA daily rainfall totals and rain-days receiving >1 mm and >10
2925 mm, which are higher over the north catchment than Ngamiland. Correlation analysis showed
2926 stronger significantly positive correlations of Ngamiland JFMA rainfall totals with DP1 and
2927 DP3 frequencies ($r = 0.59$ and 0.72 , respectively, $p < 0.05$) whereas for the north catchment,
2928 rainfall totals are only correlated significantly positive (and less strongly) with DP3 events (r

2929 = 0.36, $p < 0.05$). These correlations, and the spatial maps of rain-days and heavy rain-days,
2930 suggest that extreme rainfall events are more important to rainfall totals over Ngamiland than
2931 over the north catchment.

2932
2933 El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) impacts strongly on frequencies/intensities of both
2934 DP1 and DP3 events in JFMA, consistent with when this climate mode generally has its
2935 strongest impact over southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and
2936 Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018). El Niño (La Niña) events typically lead to less
2937 (more) intense DP1/3 events, and they also lead to low (high) frequency of these DP1/3
2938 events. The Botswana High which typically moves south and strengthens during the summer
2939 also impacts on extreme event characteristics (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017) since
2940 it leads to less regional subsidence when it is weaker than average and allows more
2941 favourable conditions for convection (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017).

2942
2943 Cloud bands were found to be the dominant synoptic weather type associated with most of
2944 the top 200 DP1 and DP3 events, consistent with other studies for rainfall in general over
2945 southern Africa (e.g., Washington and Todd, 1999; Hart et al., 2010, 2013), with tropical
2946 lows (Howard et al., 2019) also making a large contribution. Mesoscale Convective Systems
2947 (MCSs) make a small contribution to the top 200 events, although their contribution may be
2948 underestimated since they tend to be embedded within other systems like cloud bands, and
2949 they tend to be shorter-lived than cloud bands or tropical lows (Blamey and Reason, 2013;
2950 Rapolaki et al., 2019).

2951
2952 Finally, a case study of the floods that occurred over Ngamiland during the ENSO-neutral
2953 JFMA 2017 indicated that these floods were caused by several factors. These included the
2954 fact that JFMA 2017 experienced the largest number of DP3 events in the WCSA box, i.e., 10
2955 in total, over the 1981-2021 study period. Heavy rain of 8 of these 10 DP3 events fell over
2956 Ngamiland. Similarly, 8 of the 9 WCSA DP1 events that occurred during this season had
2957 their heavy rain falling over Ngamiland. The number of rain-days receiving >10 mm was also
2958 more than double the average number during JFMA 2017.

2959
2960 Based on the daily distribution of rainfall during the JFMA 2017 floods over Ngamiland, the
2961 associated circulation anomalies were separately analysed for 1 January – 8 March and 21-23
2962 April. During the 1 January – 8 March period, the Angola Low, which acts as the tropical

2963 source for the cloud bands that bring most of the summer rainfall over subtropical southern
2964 Africa (Cook et al., 2004; Hart et al., 2010, 2013), was anomalously strong. Indeed, many of
2965 the DP1 and DP3 events during this season resulted from cloud bands.

2966

2967 Other circulation anomalies that contributed to these floods include a weaker than usual
2968 Mozambique Channel Trough, which resulted in more moisture advection from the southwest
2969 Indian Ocean into the southern Africa landmass (Barimalala et al., 2018, 2020), where it
2970 converged over Botswana leading to the floods over Ngamiland. The Botswana High was
2971 weaker than normal, and there was increased uplift over most of the WCSA, implying that
2972 conditions were favourable for deep convection and cloud band development. SST anomalies
2973 in the southwest Indian Ocean were strongly positive, which has previously been associated
2974 with above average summer rainfall (Reason and Mulenga, 1999; Behera and Yamagata,
2975 2001; Reason, 2001a). Overall, the heavy rain during the 1 January – 8 March period resulted
2976 from cloud bands and tropical lows. After a relatively long dry period (March 10 - 20 April),
2977 the second most intense wet spell of the summer occurred on 22 April due to a cut-off low
2978 centred over the central Namibian coast and surface trough over Botswana. This is a caution
2979 that April is not necessarily out of the core rainy season, possibly for most of southern Africa.

2980

2981 The fact that TRMM and PERSIANN-CDR rainfall show the same interannual variability
2982 and seasonal totals as CHIRPS, as well as compare favourably with the few stations available
2983 in the ORB (Moses et al., 2022), provides confidence in the robustness of the extreme rainfall
2984 event results presented here. These results may be useful for forecasting, and may help with
2985 the management of water resources, agricultural activities and the highly biodiverse
2986 ecosystems in the ORB region. Furthermore, they highlight the importance of better
2987 understanding the characteristics of extreme rainfall events over different parts of southern
2988 Africa.

2989

2990 The following chapter focusses on drought metrics and temperature extremes (hot days) over
2991 the ORB, and their links with regional circulation systems such as the Botswana High.

2992

2993 **Chapter 6: Analysis of drought metrics and temperature extremes over the**
2994 **Okavango River basin, southern Africa, and links with the Botswana High**

2995

2996 **This chapter is presented as the paper submitted to International Journal of**
2997 **Climatology. It addresses the questions below:**

2998

2999 *Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Analysis of Drought metrics and temperature*
3000 *extremes over the Okavango River basin, southern Africa, and links with the Botswana High.*
3001 *Submitted to International Journal of Climatology.*

3002

- 3003 ▪ How do spatial mean patterns in dry spell frequencies and in 90th percentiles of
3004 maximum temperature vary seasonally, and are there relationships with the African
3005 tropical rain-belt, Congo Air Boundary and the Botswana High?
- 3006 ▪ How do drought metrics and hot day frequencies vary interannually, and do they show
3007 significant trends?
- 3008 ▪ Do these variables have relationships with climate modes such as ENSO?

3009 **Abstract**

3010

3011 The Okavango River Basin (ORB), including the World Heritage site Okavango Delta, is a
3012 region of high biodiversity projected to suffer increased early summer drying under climate
3013 change. Little work has been done on drought over this sensitive region. Here, various
3014 drought metrics are analysed over the ORB. These include a Cumulative Drought Intensity
3015 (CDI) index, based on the product of maximum temperature anomaly and maximum duration
3016 of a dry spell, and the Standardised Precipitation-Evapotranspiration Index (SPEI). Strong
3017 gradients in dry spell and hot day frequencies shift south over the ORB from August to
3018 November as the tropical rain-belt moves south of the equator, the Congo Air Boundary
3019 declines and the Botswana High strengthens and moves southwestwards. By December, the
3020 tropical gradient in dry spell frequencies has vanished while that across the Limpopo River
3021 and southern ORB region, where the Botswana High is centred, is prominent. Seasonal
3022 analyses highlight October-November 2013-2021 as particularly dry and hot over the
3023 Okavango Delta region (Ngamiland district). This dry/hot epoch is shown to be related to a
3024 stronger and southward shifted Botswana High and reduced low-level moisture convergence.
3025 For December-February, this period was also anomalously dry and hot over Ngamiland and
3026 the north catchment of the ORB. On interannual scales, strong relationships were found with
3027 the Botswana High, and to a lesser extent El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO). El Niño (La
3028 Niña) events were generally associated with high (low) dry spell and hot day frequencies.
3029 The early summer shows a strong drying-warming trend, related to a significant
3030 strengthening of the Botswana High. These trends, together with the Coupled Model
3031 Intercomparison Project Phase 6 (CMIP6) projected early summer drying over southern
3032 Africa found in the literature, may impact severely on the sensitive ecosystems of the ORB
3033 and on subsistence agriculture in the region.

3034

3035 **6.1 Introduction**

3036

3037 Southern Africa is a region with high climate variability whose rural population and the urban
3038 poor depend on rainfed agriculture (Tyson, 1986; Reason et al., 2006; Conway et al., 2015).
3039 The region is prone to droughts which are threats to agriculture, hence to food security. For
3040 example, droughts that had severe impacts in southern Africa include those that occurred in
3041 1982/83, 1991/92 and 2015/16 (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018). Impacts
3042 included widespread crop losses, livestock mortality and severe water shortages.

3043

3044 Drought impacts during the rainy season can be worsened by co-occurrence of other extremes
3045 such as hot days and heat waves (Lyon, 2009; Ye et al., 2019). The Intergovernmental Panel
3046 on Climate Change (IPCC) fifth (IPCC, 2013) and sixth (IPCC, 2021) reports based on the
3047 Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase 5 (CMIP5) and 6 (CMIP6), respectively, show
3048 that the frequency of co-occurrence of droughts and hot extremes has increased on the global
3049 scale, motivating us to assess these over particular regions in southern Africa. These reports
3050 also show that intensity and frequency of these and other climate extremes are likely to
3051 increase over the subcontinent because of global warming. Like hot extremes, dry spells are
3052 also a crucial aspect of the rainy season that are related to drought impacts. Too many dry
3053 spells during the rainy season lead to the drying out of soils which may cause rainfed crop
3054 failure, hence posing a threat to food security (Rockström and Falkenmark, 2000; Guilpart et
3055 al., 2017). Since drought impacts during the rainy season can be aggravated by co-occurrence
3056 of hot extremes and too many dry spells, it is therefore important to better understand how
3057 these variables evolve during the rainy season.

3058

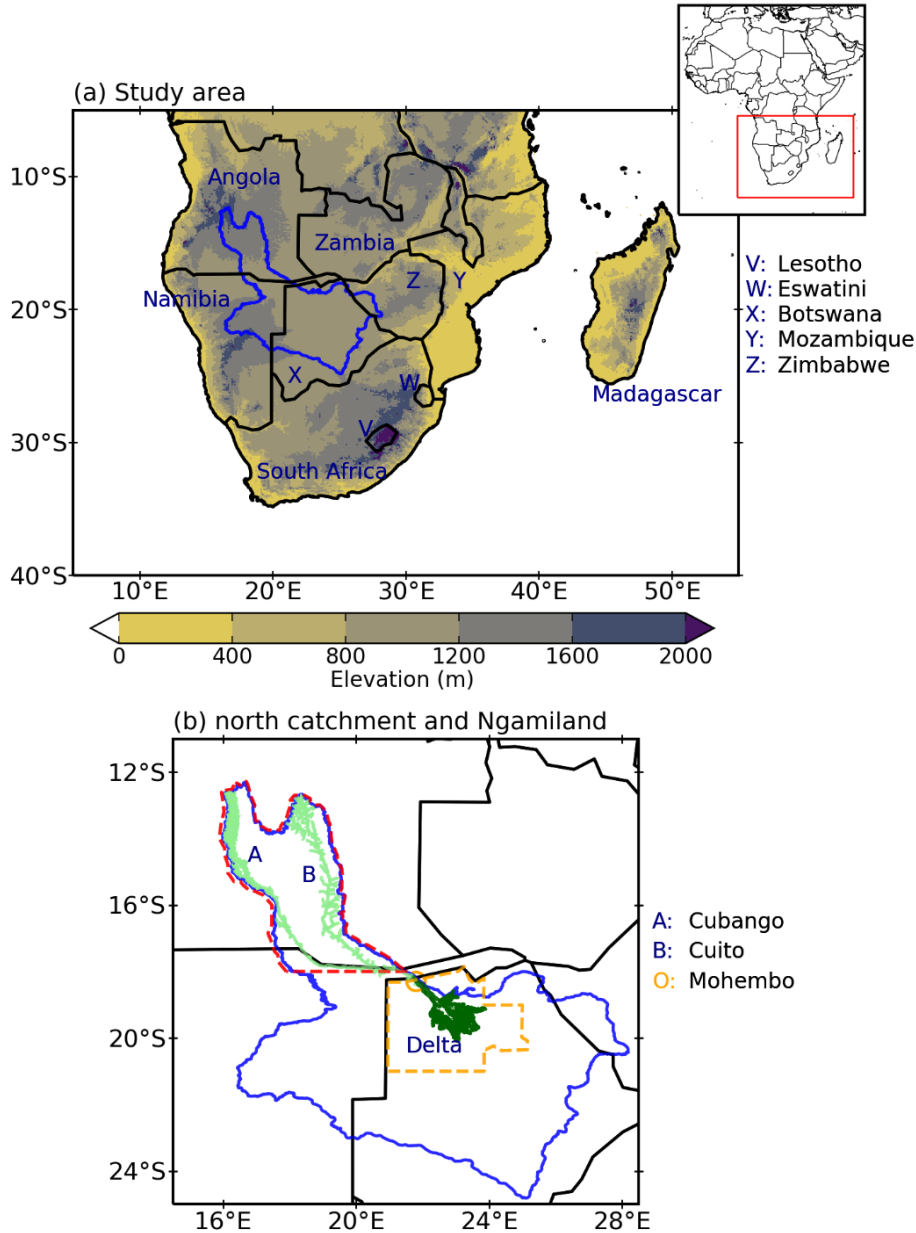
3059 Co-occurrences of these extremes during the summer rainy season have not been given much
3060 attention over southern Africa. Lyon (2009) investigated characteristics of heat waves,
3061 drought, and their joint occurrence during December-February while Meque et al. (2022)
3062 investigated heat wave characteristics during November-March. Driver and Reason (2017)
3063 examined interannual variability in dry spell frequency and maximum air temperatures. Dry
3064 spell frequencies during December-February were examined by Usman and Reason (2004)
3065 who found evidence of a drought corridor existing across the sub-continent in the 20°-24°S
3066 zone. This drought corridor was further refined by Thoithi et al. (2021) who found a second
3067 such corridor over the Zambezi River region in early summer as well as significant
3068 decreasing trends in dry spells over parts of Namibia and Botswana in mid-summer. These

3069 regions include parts of the southern half of the Okavango River Basin (ORB), located in
3070 central southern Africa (blue polygon in **Figure 6.1a**), which is focussed on in this study. The
3071 ORB region is of particular interest and importance since it has high biodiversity, contains
3072 unique ecosystems as well as the worldwide-known Okavango Delta, which is a United
3073 Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) world heritage and
3074 Ramsar site (UNESCO, 2014). To date, there has been little work on drought, dry spells and
3075 hot extremes and their evolution over the ORB.

3076

3077 The ORB and most of Africa south of 10°S (except the far southwest and the south coast of
3078 South Africa) experience highly variable seasonal rains from October to March or April.
3079 While El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) is known to be the main interannual climate
3080 mode affecting southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and
3081 Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018), its impact on drought over the ORB has not been
3082 given much attention. Also, its role on impacting regional circulation features like the mid-
3083 level Botswana High is not well understood. This Botswana High tends to suppress (enhance)
3084 rainfall when it is strong (weak) due to increased (reduced) subsidence over the region
3085 (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). These authors noted that while the Botswana High
3086 is typically weaker (stronger) during La Niña (El Niño), large anomalies in this high-pressure
3087 system can also occur during neutral ENSO summers.

3088



3089
 3090 **Figure 6.1** (a) The study area, i.e., southern Africa (5°-40°S, 5°-55°E), with its surface
 3091 elevation shown. It's location in Africa is shown in the insert of the panel. The blue polygon
 3092 is the extent of the Okavango River Basin (ORB). Country names denoted by letters are spelt
 3093 out on the right of the panel. (b) Subdivision of the ORB into the north catchment (red dashed
 3094 polygon) and Ngamiland (orange dashed polygon). The two main rivers, i.e., Cubango and
 3095 Cuito, denoted by "A" and "B", respectively, which originate from the southern Angolan
 3096 Highlands and merge in southeastern Angola to form the Okavango River, and Mohembo
 3097 hydrological station (orange circle) at the apex of the Okavango Delta are shown.
 3098

3099 The Congo Air Boundary is also an important feature associated with rainfall variability over
3100 southern Africa. This feature is a band of surface humidity gradient and/or near-surface wind
3101 convergence located at the northern edge of the easterly Indian Ocean trade winds and the
3102 southern edge of the low-level westerlies (Howard and Washington, 2019, 2020). This means
3103 that both the convergence of surface winds and the horizontal distribution of surface humidity
3104 are important for establishing the Congo Air Boundary. This boundary typically extends from
3105 central Angola to western Zambia, and it marks the location of the southern edge of the
3106 African tropical rain-belt. Until the Congo Air Boundary disintegrates in
3107 November/December, it inhibits penetration of moist and unstable Congo air from the tropics
3108 further into the southern African subtropics, resulting in less rain over the latter. The Congo
3109 Basin is an important continental source of moisture during summer for subtropical southern
3110 Africa (D'Abreton and Tyson, 1995; Rapolaki et al., 2020) while major oceanic sources are
3111 the tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean, western tropical Indian Ocean and the southwest Indian
3112 Ocean (Rouault et al., 2003a; Cook et al., 2004; Reason et al., 2006; Vigaud et al., 2009;
3113 Manhique et al., 2015).

3114

3115 Given the vulnerability of the unique ORB ecosystems to drought and the reliance of the
3116 local population on rain-fed agriculture, the objectives here are to (i) assess seasonal spatial
3117 mean patterns in dry spell frequencies and in hot days, as well as relationships with the
3118 African tropical rain-belt, Congo Air Boundary and the Botswana High, (ii) examine
3119 interannual variability and trends in drought metrics and hot day frequencies, and (iii)
3120 determine possible relationships of these variables with climate modes such as ENSO.

3121

3122 **6.2 Data and Methods**

3123

3124 First, spatial distributions of mean dry spell frequencies and 90th percentiles of maximum
3125 temperature were considered over southern Africa south of 5°S. Note that **Chapters 4 and 5**
3126 consider southern Africa south of 10°S whereas the present chapter considers a bigger region,
3127 i.e., southern Africa south of 5°S, to capture regions of high dry spell frequencies better.
3128 After considering the spatial distributions, time series of dry spell frequencies and hot days
3129 with maximum temperature greater than 90th percentiles, as well as Standardised
3130 Precipitation-Evapotranspiration Index (SPEI; Vicente-Serrano et al., 2010, 2015) were
3131 examined for the particular region of interest and importance, the ORB. Over the ORB, the
3132 focus was placed on the north catchment and on the Ngamiland district which contains the

3133 world-famous Okavango Delta (**Figure 6.1b**). The north catchment is the part of the ORB
3134 upstream of the Okavango Delta apex at Mohembo (18°S) (**Figure 6.1b**), where most of the
3135 ORB streamflow is generated (Andersson et al., 2003; Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008).

3136

3137 Based on previous analyses for rainfall over the ORB (Moses et al., 2022) and for dry spells
3138 over southern Africa (Thoithi et al., 2021), the analyses were done for October-November
3139 (ON), December-February (DJF) and March-April (MA), over the period 1981-2021. Very
3140 little rain falls in the ORB during May-September. December to February are typically the
3141 wettest months, hence the main growing season, but some years also have significant falls in
3142 ON (onset of the rainy season) or March-April (end of the rainy season).

3143

3144 Various indices have been developed to quantify drought. Here, droughts are identified using
3145 a multi-scalar index, SPEI, from the Spanish National Research Council (CSIC) (Vicente-
3146 Serrano et al., 2010, 2015). Formulation of this index is based on precipitation as well as
3147 temperature-based potential evapotranspiration component, and its multi-scalar
3148 characteristics enable identification of droughts in the context of global warming (IPCC
3149 2013, 2021). Available precipitation and temperature-based data can be used for its
3150 calculation. SPEI has a spatial resolution of 0.5° and can be calculated on various time scales
3151 from monthly to several years. It has been used successfully in the southern African region,
3152 for example, to study drought in Botswana (Byakatonda et al., 2020) and in South Africa
3153 (Edossa et al., 2014). Like in Yu et al. (2014), SPEI values ≤ -1 are considered to be a
3154 drought on the corresponding time scale used to calculate this parameter which in this study
3155 were 2-month (SPEI-2) (for ON and MA) and 3-month (SPEI-3) (for DJF).

3156

3157 Following Usman and Reason (2004) and Thoithi et al. (2021), a dry spell is defined as a 5-
3158 day period (pentad) receiving less than 5 mm. Due to shortage of rainfall observations in the
3159 study area, the Climate Hazards Infrared Precipitation with Station data (CHIRPS; Funk et
3160 al., 2015) version 2, with a 0.05° (spatial) and daily (temporal) resolution, was used for
3161 identification of dry spells and monthly evolution of the tropical rain-belt. Previous studies
3162 found that CHIRPS data performed reasonably well when compared with monthly station
3163 data in northern Botswana and Namibia (Moses et al., 2022), and with station data in northern
3164 South Africa (Rapolaki et al., 2019; Thoithi et al., 2021). This could be related to the fact that
3165 CHIRPS is based on the interpolation of station data.

3166

3167 Hot days were defined as the number of days with a maximum temperature greater than the
 3168 90th percentile per season, over the observational record (1981-2021), using 2m air
 3169 temperature from 0.25° resolution ERA5 reanalyses (Copernicus Climate Change Service,
 3170 2017; Hersbach et al., 2020). The choice of the percentile-based index was based on the
 3171 Expert Team on Climate Change Detection and Indices (ETCCDI; Zhang et al., 2011;
 3172 Sillmann et al., 2013) and on other relevant studies (Lyon, 2009; Mueller and Seneviratne,
 3173 2012). Unlike threshold-based indices, percentile-based indices are more suitable for spatial
 3174 comparisons of extremes (Zhang et al., 2011). ERA5 reanalyses along with NOAA Optimally
 3175 Interpolated SST data (0.25° resolution, Huang et al., 2021) were used to analyse potential
 3176 mechanisms associated with an extended dry period during 2013-2021.

3177
 3178 Since drought tends to involve both a lack of rain as well as high temperatures, and it is the
 3179 compounded effect of large anomalies in these variables which negatively impacts on
 3180 agriculture, ecosystems and people, a Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric was
 3181 derived. This metric was computed by multiplying the maximum dry spell duration (n) in a
 3182 particular season by the corresponding maximum temperature anomaly ($anomTmax$) such
 3183 that each dry spell had to last at least 3 days. This temperature anomaly is the average
 3184 maximum daily temperature over that dry spell event ($Tmax_{ds}$) minus the climatological
 3185 maximum temperature ($climTmax$) for that time of year. Maximum dry spell duration is the
 3186 largest number of consecutive days receiving < 1 mm each in a particular season (based on
 3187 the ETCCDI above). Such a metric then provides another measure of the relative severity of
 3188 an extremely dry summer rainy season, analogous to cumulative intensity often used to
 3189 determine the severity of marine heat waves (Hobday et al., 2016). The equations below
 3190 (**Equations 6.1 to 6.4**) show how the CDI metric was derived.

3191
 3192
$$CDI = n \times anomTmax \quad 6.1$$

3193
 3194
$$anomTmax = Tmax_{ds} - climTmax \quad 6.2$$

3195
 3196
$$Tmax_{ds} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Tmax_i \quad 6.3$$

3197
 3198
$$climTmax = \frac{1}{n \times m} \sum_{j=1}^m \sum_{i=1}^n Tmax_{ij} \quad 6.4$$

3199

3200 where n , anomTmax , $Tmax_{ds}$ and climTmax are as described in the paragraph preceding the
3201 equations. In **Equation 6.3**, $Tmax_i$ is the i^{th} maximum temperature value over a particular
3202 dry spell event. In **Equation 6.4**, the index (ij) in $Tmax_{ij}$ means the i^{th} maximum
3203 temperature value over a particular dry spell event in a particular year j , and in the same
3204 equation, $m = 41$ (in years), which is the length of the study period 1981-2021. The units of
3205 the CDI metric are $^{\circ}\text{C}$ days, based on **Equation 6.1**.

3206

3207 Possible relationships of the above-mentioned variables with ENSO or indices for regional
3208 circulation systems (Botswana High, Angola Low) were examined using the Pearson's
3209 product-moment correlations with significance reported at the 95% level. Correlations with
3210 the Southern Annular Mode, the subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole and the Benguela Niño
3211 were weak (not shown). For ENSO, the Niño 3.4 index is used. This index, defined as the
3212 monthly average of the SST anomalies in the Central Pacific (5°N - 5°S ; 120° - 170°W), was
3213 obtained from NOAA Climate Prediction Centre (CPC) (Huang et al., 2021). To compute the
3214 Angola Low index, the 850 hPa geopotential height from ERA5, averaged over 16° - 20°S ,
3215 18° - 22°E (based on Munday and Washington, 2017) was used, whereas for the Botswana
3216 High index, the 500 hPa geopotential height averaged over 19° - 23°S , 16° - 21°E (based on
3217 Driver and Reason, 2017) was used.

3218

3219 Trends in the variables were computed and tested for statistical significance at $\alpha = 0.05$, using
3220 the Hamed and Rao (1998) and Yue and Wang (2002) tests, which are both modified from
3221 the nonparametric Mann-Kendall test (MKT) (Mann, 1945; Kendall, 1975). The MKT is
3222 widely used because it is not affected by the actual distribution of the data and is less
3223 sensitive to outliers. However, the original MKT does not take into consideration data
3224 autocorrelation, unlike the modified trend tests used here.

3225

3226 **6.3 Results**

3227

3228 *6.3.1 Annual cycle*

3229

3230 This section discusses the monthly evolution of dry spell frequencies during the austral
3231 summer half of the year, and how they may align with key features of the southern African

3232 climate like the African tropical rain-belt, the Congo Air Boundary (CAB), and the Botswana
3233 High.

3234

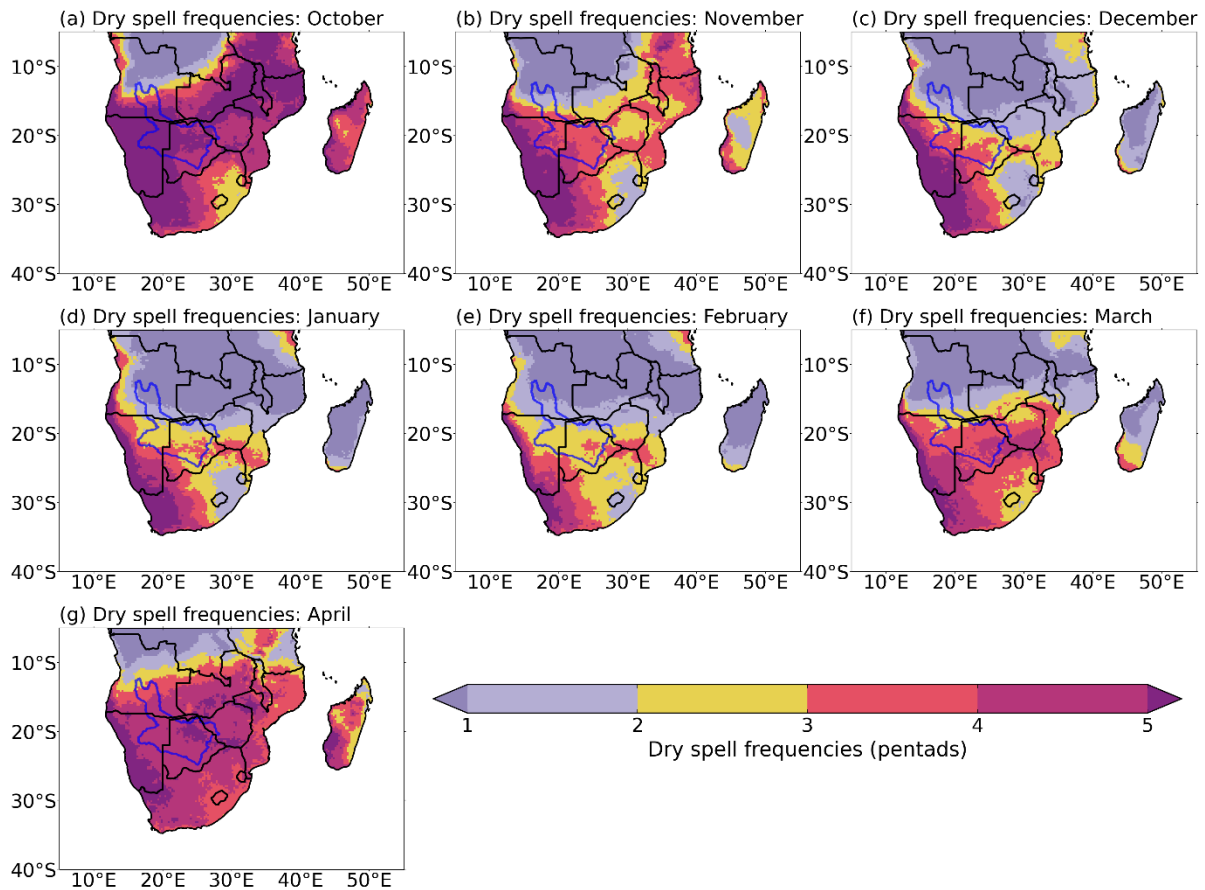
3235 **Figure 6.2** plots monthly dry spell frequencies over southern Africa. October shows high dry
3236 spell frequencies over most of southern Africa with two prominent gradients (here dry spell
3237 gradient refers to diagonally or zonally elongated regions with high dry spell frequencies)
3238 standing out, which are obvious in November (**Figures 6.2a-b**). The stronger of the two is the
3239 diagonal gradient noted by Thoithi et al. (2021) which extends in northwest-southeast
3240 direction from southern Angola across the western Kalahari Desert into the southern part of
3241 the Karoo Desert on the leeward side of the south coast mountains in South Africa. The
3242 second gradient extends from southern Angola northeastwards across Zambia towards
3243 Tanzania and more or less follows the CAB in October (Howard and Washington, 2019). As
3244 previously found by Thoithi et al. (2021), this second gradient shifts poleward in November
3245 with the core of highest dry spells along the Zambezi River valley near 15°-17°S (**Figure**
3246 **6.2b**). Further south, there is a strong gradient from November onwards in the subtropics
3247 extending from central Namibia and Botswana along the Limpopo River valley into southern
3248 Mozambique, termed the meridional gradient (Thoithi et al., 2021). By December, only this
3249 meridional gradient is clearly evident (**Figure 6.2c**) and remains very prominent through the
3250 rest of the summer (**Figures 6.2d-f**) until April when the tropical gradient re-establishes itself
3251 (**Figure 6.2g**) as the summer rains come to an end.

3252

3253 The above monthly evolution of dry spell frequencies is compared with the monthly
3254 climatology of firstly surface specific humidity and surface winds for the CAB (**Figure 6.3**),
3255 and secondly, the African tropical rain-belt (**Figure 6.4**) averaged over longitudes
3256 corresponding to the ORB's north catchment and Ngamiland (**Figure 6.1b**). Howard and
3257 Washington (2019) showed that the CAB marks the position of the southern edge of the
3258 African tropical rain-belt whose seasonal shift is associated with rainfall onset over the
3259 continent (Dunning et al., 2016). In August and September (**Figures 6.3a-b**), the presence of
3260 the CAB is evidenced by a strong humidity gradient with low-level wind convergence across
3261 northern Angola and southern Democratic Republic of Congo. During these months, the
3262 maximum in tropical rainfall occurs north of the equator near 8°N (**Figure 6.4**). South of the
3263 equator, the CAB is evident in **Figure 6.4** in the rainfall gradient near 5°-8°S in September
3264 whereas polewards of the CAB, the air is dry, with very little rainfall in the 11°-21°S latitude
3265 band which corresponds to the north catchment and Ngamiland. By October, as the CAB

3266 shifts polewards to the northern ORB (12°-15°S) and northwestern Zambia (**Figure 6.3c**), so
 3267 does the maximum in tropical rainfall to lie near 2°-3°S. In this month, low dry spell
 3268 frequencies are now evident over the far north of the ORB as well as most of Angola and the
 3269 DR Congo (**Figure 6.2a**).

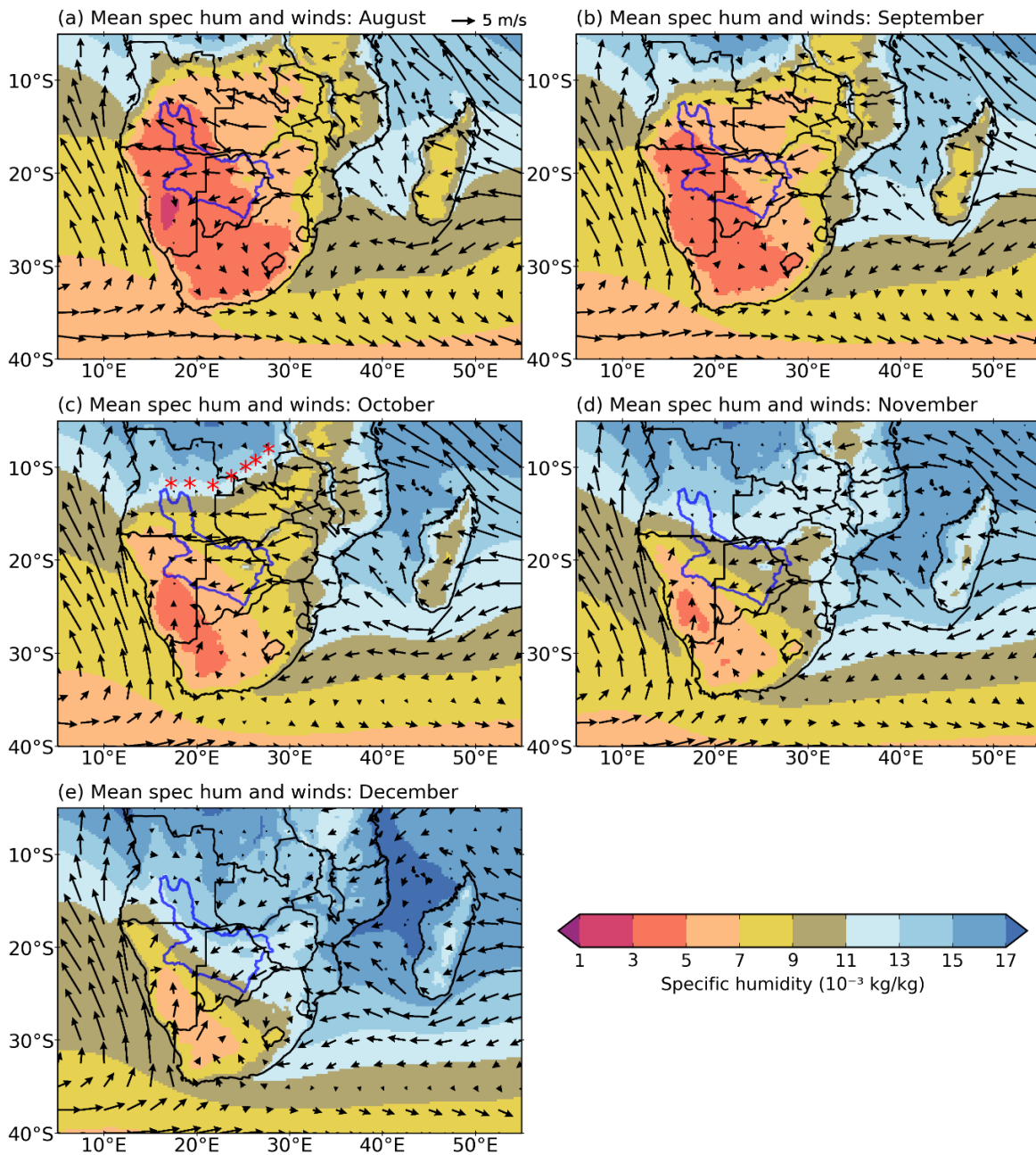
3270



3271

3272 **Figure 6.2** (a)-(g) Monthly mean of dry spell frequencies for October to April, respectively,
 3273 over southern Africa for the period 1981-2021. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1.

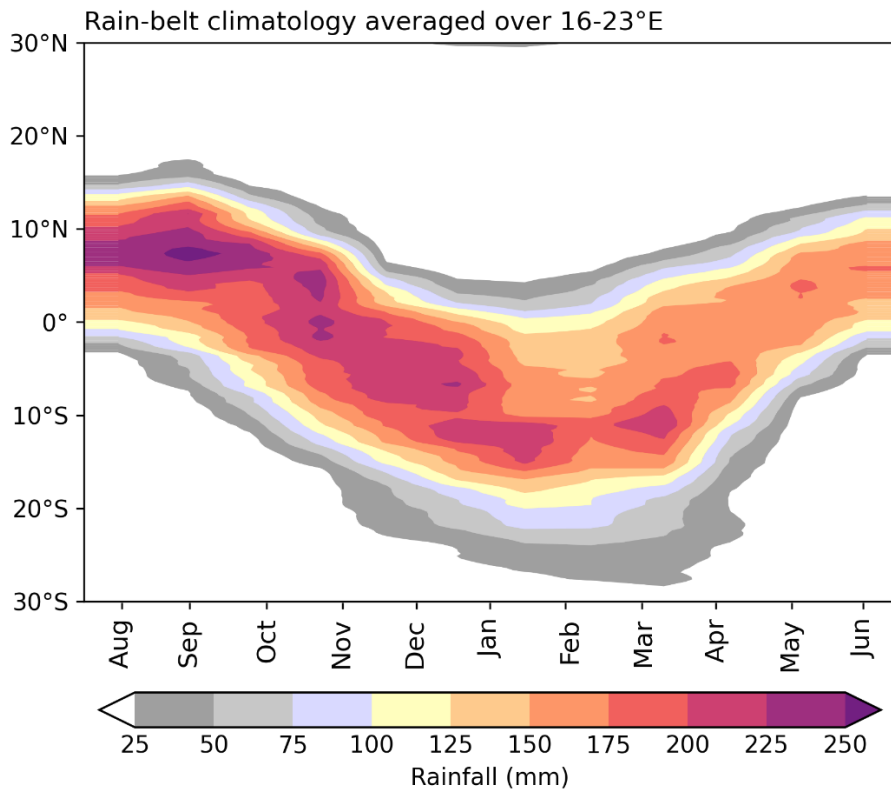
3274



3275

3276 **Figure 6.3** (a)-(e) Monthly mean of 2 m specific humidity (spec hum; shading) overlaid with
 3277 10 m winds (vectors), for August to December over southern Africa for the period 1981-
 3278 2021. The humidity gradient and wind convergence in these plots are used to identify the
 3279 Congo Air Boundary described in the text. The approximate position of this boundary is
 3280 marked with red stars in (c) as an example. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1.

3281



3282

3283 **Figure 6.4** Monthly climatology of the African tropical rain-belt averaged over longitudes
3284 16°-23°E, for the period 1981-2021.

3285

3286 As the summer rainy season sets in over southern Africa during October/November, the CAB
3287 shifts further polewards (**Figures 6.3c-d**) with the maximum in tropical rainfall following
3288 along just to its north (**Figure 6.4**), resulting in poleward shift in the region of lower
3289 frequencies of dry spells (**Figures 6.2a-b**). As described by Howard and Washington (2019),
3290 the CAB collapses typically in November/December (consistent with **Figures 6.3d-e** of this
3291 thesis) and the tropical gradient in dry spell frequency over the Zambezi River Valley
3292 disappears (**Figure 6.2c**). As the CAB collapses, the maximum in tropical rainfall shifts
3293 poleward to near 7°-10°S (**Figure 6.4**), just north of the ORB, since the moist Congo air is
3294 able to move farther poleward after the collapse of this CAB. Also, during December, there is
3295 a poleward expansion of the area of relatively low frequencies of dry spells to cover the north
3296 catchment and most of southern Africa north of ~18°S (**Figure 6.2c**).

3297

3298 During the mid-summer, the maximum rainfall continues to shift polewards to reach about
3299 12°-14°S, the northernmost part of the ORB, by February (**Figure 6.4**). The tropical dry spell
3300 gradient is not evident during December-February, whereas the meridional dry spell gradient
3301 along the Limpopo River valley near 20°-23°S as well as the diagonal gradient extending

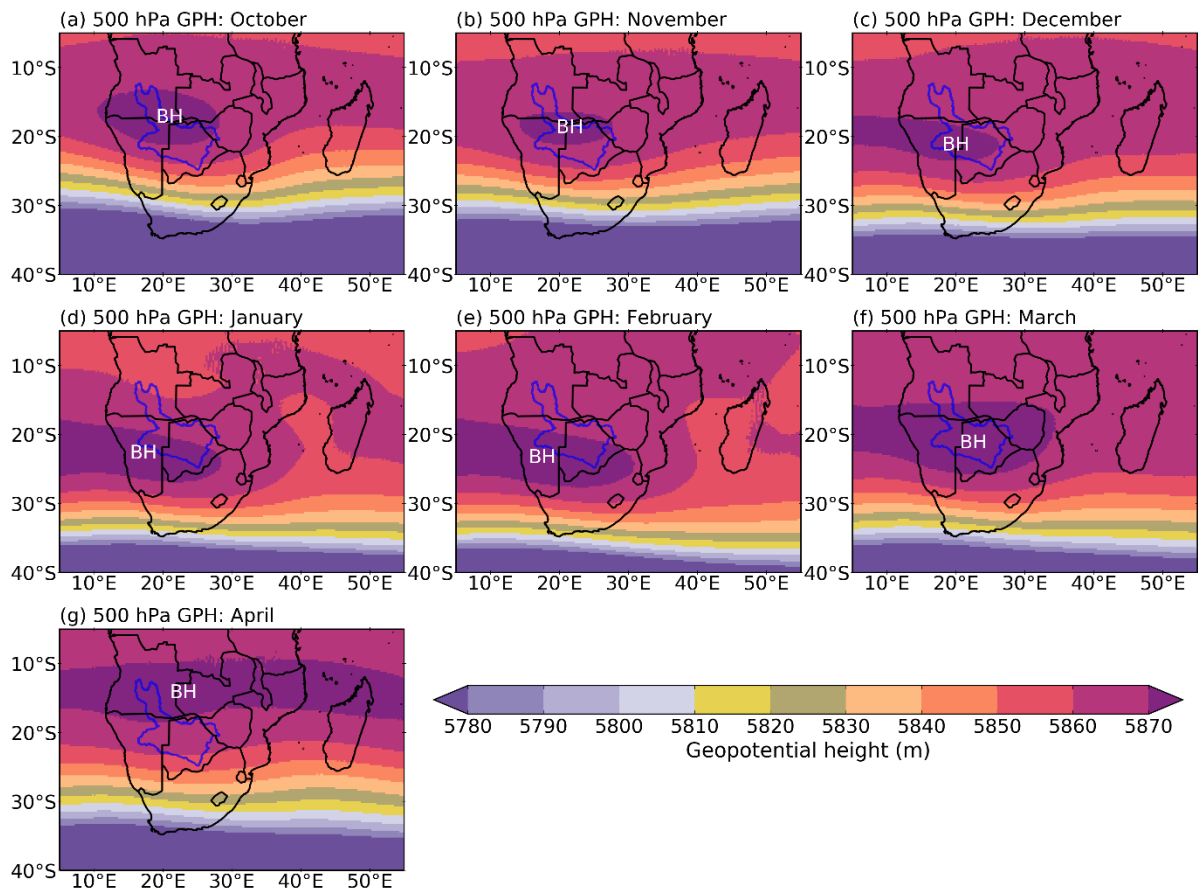
3302 southeastwards from northwestern Namibia to the south coast of South Africa are prominent
3303 (**Figures 6.2c-e**). Usman and Reason (2004) termed the 20°-24°S zone the drought corridor
3304 because although on average the maximum dry spell frequencies are only about 7-10 out of a
3305 maximum possible of 18 pentads, the interannual variability is such that many summers show
3306 considerably higher dry spell frequencies and hence experience severe drought. In March, dry
3307 spell frequencies begin to increase over the ORB, Zimbabwe and southern Zambia (**Figure**
3308 **6.2f**) as the maximum rainfall in the tropical rain-belt moves slightly equatorward (**Figure**
3309 **6.4**). April shows a more obvious withdrawal of the rainfall maximum back towards the
3310 equator (**Figure 6.4**), and the re-establishment of the tropical dry spell gradient (**Figure 6.2g**)
3311 as the summer rainy season ends over most of southern Africa.

3312

3313 It is worth noting that in **Figure 6.4**, the rainfall belt appears to migrate poleward more
3314 slowly than it retreats equatorward, and that clearly the latitude of the maximum rainfall belt
3315 during austral summer (January-March) is south of 10°S while that during boreal summer is
3316 south of 10°N. The fact that this rainfall belt reaches at higher latitudes over southern Africa
3317 may be due to the existence of the two oceans that surround southern Africa and provide
3318 ample moisture related to persistence of the tropical rain-belt and hence the long dry spells
3319 south of the belt.

3320

3321 **Figure 6.5** shows monthly climatologies of 500 hPa geopotential height used to identify the
3322 location of the Botswana High. The exact location of this Botswana High, denoted by BH in
3323 the figure, was taken to be the central point of the highest closed contour (darkest red
3324 contour). The figure shows that the location of the mid-level Botswana High, like that of the
3325 maximum rainfall in the tropical rain-belt, also influences the distributions of dry spell
3326 frequencies (**Figure 6.2**). The Botswana High tends to suppress rainfall when it is strong due
3327 to increased subsidence over the region, whereas when it is weak, rainfall conditions are more
3328 favourable (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). August is the first month in which the
3329 Botswana High starts to appear (not shown), when it is centred mainly over southern Angola.
3330 As the maximum in tropical rainfall moves polewards in spring (**Figure 6.4**) so does the
3331 Botswana High so that by October, it is centred over the northern half of the ORB and
3332 adjoining areas in southern Angola/northern Namibia/northwestern Botswana (**Figure 6.5a**).
3333 At the same time, the diagonal gradient of dry spells is strong and located furthest east with
3334 highest dry spell frequencies of 4-5 pentads per month occurring on average over most of the
3335 ORB (**Figure 6.2a**).



3337

3338 **Figure 6.5** (a)-(g) Monthly mean of 500 hPa geopotential height (GPH; shaded) for October
 3339 to April over southern Africa, showing the mean position of the Botswana High (BH)
 3340 (position determined as described in the text) for the period 1981-2021. The blue polygon is
 3341 as in Figure 6.1.

3342

3343 The Botswana High continues to move poleward through until January/February as well as
 3344 extending zonally (**Figures 6.5c-e**), while at the same time the meridional gradient of dry
 3345 spell frequencies in the Limpopo River valley becomes more and more prominent (**Figures**
 3346 **6.2c-e**). The zonally elongated structure of the Botswana High over southern Africa with
 3347 westward extension over the South Atlantic which is obvious after December (**Figure 6.5a-g**)
 3348 is consistent with Reason (2016) who, during January-March, found a ridge of high pressure
 3349 extending across the subtropical landmasses in the Southern Hemisphere at 500 hPa, with
 3350 closed anticyclones located over Botswana/Namibia (where “BH” is in **Figures 6.5d-f**, hence
 3351 confirming the location of the Botswana High in these figures), the South Atlantic, Bolivia
 3352 and western Australia. From March, the Botswana High retreats northward so that by April,
 3353 its centre is over the far north of the ORB (**Figure 6.5g**) while the tropical dry spell gradient

3354 becomes re-established over northern Zambia (**Figure 6.2g**). High dry spell frequencies are
3355 now present over most of southern Africa roughly like in October/November (**Figure 6.2**).
3356 Taken together, **Figures 6.2-6.5** show how regions of high dry spell frequencies evolve
3357 through the summer half of the year in relation to the positions of the African tropical rain-
3358 belt and the Botswana High.

3359

3360 *6.3.2 Seasonal climatological patterns*

3361

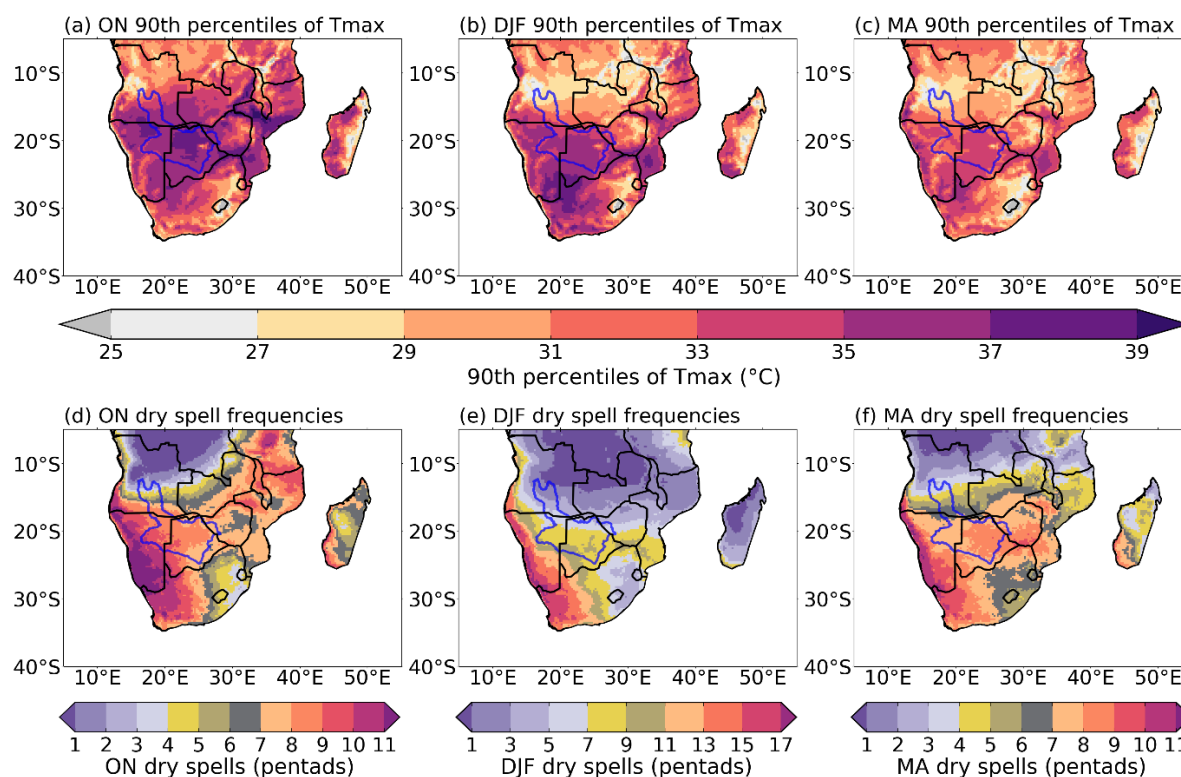
3362 In this section, mean spatial patterns in dry spell frequencies and in 90th percentiles of
3363 maximum temperature for ON, DJF and MA are considered (**Figure 6.6**). In early summer
3364 (ON), largest values of the 90th percentiles of maximum temperature occur over most of the
3365 ORB through the Limpopo and Zambezi River valleys into the southern half of Mozambique
3366 (**Figure 6.6a**). This area roughly corresponds to those with high dry spell frequencies (**Figure**
3367 **6.6d**). In DJF (**Figure 6.6b**), the pattern is similar to that for ON, but the values are now
3368 lower over the northern ORB and Zambezi River valley, as cloud cover and the tropical rain-
3369 belt shift south (**Figure 6.4**), and dry spell frequencies over these regions are much reduced
3370 compared to ON (**Figure 6.6e**). In MA (**Figure 6.6c**), the 90th percentiles of maximum
3371 temperature show patterns that are similar to those for DJF, but with values that are lower
3372 than those for both DJF and ON, as maximum insolation has now shifted north to lie near the
3373 equator. Dry spell frequencies in MA (**Figure 6.6f**) show a similar pattern to ON but reduced
3374 in magnitude over the southern half of the ORB as well as most of subtropical southern
3375 Africa.

3376

3377 In ON and MA, the tropical gradient in dry spell frequencies is evident from southern
3378 Angola/northern ORB/east to northeastern Zambia and is not present in DJF. The meridional
3379 gradient in the Limpopo River valley, and southern part of the ORB, is particularly strong in
3380 DJF but less so in ON or MA (**Figures 6.6d-f**). The latter two seasons also show a more
3381 eastward extended diagonal gradient in South Africa than is the case for DJF. This change in
3382 the diagonal gradient may reflect the greater contribution of ridging anticyclones to summer
3383 rainfall over southeastern South Africa relative to ON and MA (Weldon and Reason, 2014;
3384 Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Ndarana et al., 2020). Note that ridging anticyclones refers to the
3385 eastward extension of the South Atlantic High (St. Helena High) around the South African
3386 landmass (Ndarana et al., 2021), thereby drawing moisture from the South Atlantic and
3387 Southwest Indian Oceans (Rapolaki et al., 2020). While southeastern South Africa only

3388 shows low dry spell frequencies in DJF, the Congo Basin experiences low numbers
 3389 throughout the entire summer half of the year.

3390



3391

3392 **Figure 6.6** (a)-(c) show 90th percentiles of maximum temperatures (Tmax) for ON, DJF and
 3393 MA, respectively, over southern Africa for the period 1981-2021. (d)-(f) show dry spell
 3394 frequencies for ON, DJF and MA, respectively. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1.

3395

3396 6.3.3 Interannual variability

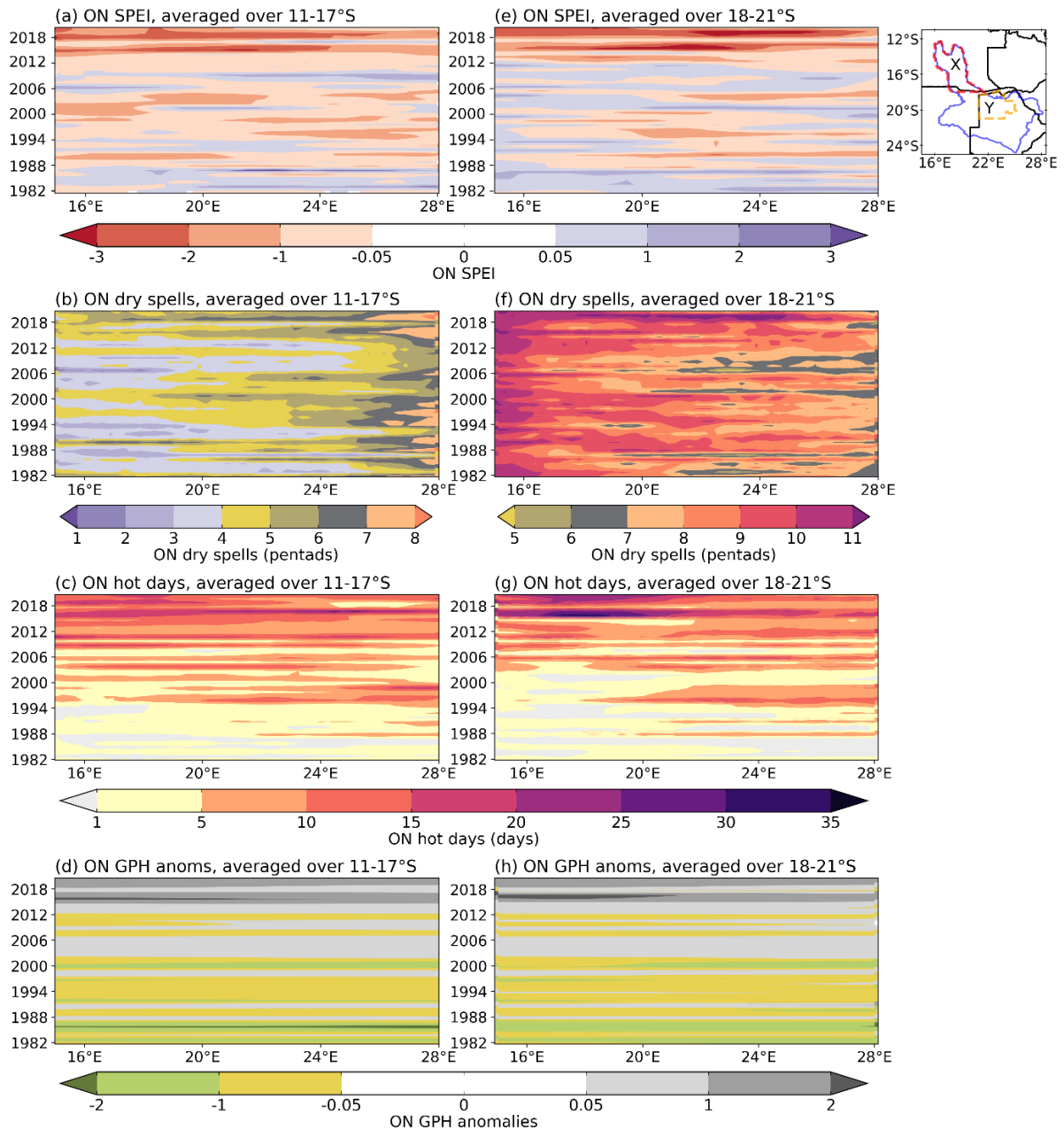
3397

3398 Focus is now placed on interannual variability in drought-related parameters over the ORB.
 3399 These data are analysed for two key regions, namely, the north catchment which is the source
 3400 region for the Okavango River flow measured at Mohembo, upstream of the Okavango Delta
 3401 (**Figure 6.1b**), and Ngamiland which is the district within which the Delta is found. As
 3402 apparent in **Figure 6.6**, the north catchment displays far fewer dry spells and has cooler 90th
 3403 percentile temperatures than Ngamiland, so it is appropriate to analyse them separately.

3404

3405 **Figure 6.7** shows ON longitude-time Hovmoller plots of SPEI-2 values, frequencies of dry
 3406 spells, hot days with maximum temperatures greater than 90th percentiles and anomalies of
 3407 500 hPa geopotential height. These data are presented in two columns, with the left column

3408 averaged over latitudes corresponding to the north catchment (11°-17°S) and the right over
3409 Ngamiland (18°-21°S). While there is considerable interannual variability throughout, an
3410 obvious contrast exists between a multi-year period of negative SPEI, more dry spells, more
3411 hot days and a stronger Botswana High from 2013 onwards and the opposite during 1982-
3412 1988. This multi-year contrasting pattern is more obvious over Ngamiland (**Figures 6.7e-h**)
3413 than over the north catchment (**Figures 6.7a-d**). On these multi-year scales, a clear linkage
3414 exists between a stronger (weaker) Botswana High with more (less) mid-tropospheric
3415 subsidence and hotter, drier (cooler, wetter) ON seasons. However, for some of the years in
3416 between these two multi-year periods, the relationship is less clear. For example, 1992-1995
3417 shows a weaker Botswana High (**Figures 6.7d,h**) but much of this period had negative SPEI
3418 (**Figures 6.7a,e**) and relatively large number of dry spells (**Figures 6.7b,f**) over most
3419 longitudes. The reasons as to why dry spell frequencies are so different between the north
3420 catchment and Ngamiland are not clear since there are small differences in the SPEI, the
3421 number of hot days and the geopotential height anomalies. The period 1992-1995 included a
3422 protracted El Niño when southern African rainfall impacts tend to differ from shorter ENSO
3423 events (Allan et al., 2003). Protracted El Niño events are often associated with more severe
3424 droughts than canonical El Niño events (Allan et al., 2003). Nevertheless, the multi-year
3425 2013-2021 period stands out in **Figure 6.7** and is analysed as a case study in the next section.
3426



3427

3428 **Figure 6.7** First column: (a) Evolution of SPEI-2 values for ON (ON SPEI) averaged over
 3429 latitudes 11°-17°S; (b)-(d) Dry spell frequencies, hot day frequencies and 500 hPa
 3430 geopotential height (GPH) anomalies (anoms), respectively, for ON, averaged over the same
 3431 latitudes as in (a). Second column: (d)-(h) are as in (a)-(d), respectively, but averaged over
 3432 latitudes 18°-21°S. Latitudes in the first and second columns correspond with the north
 3433 catchment and Ngamiland, respectively, i.e., red (orange) dashed polygon marked X (Y) to
 3434 the right of panel (e).

3435

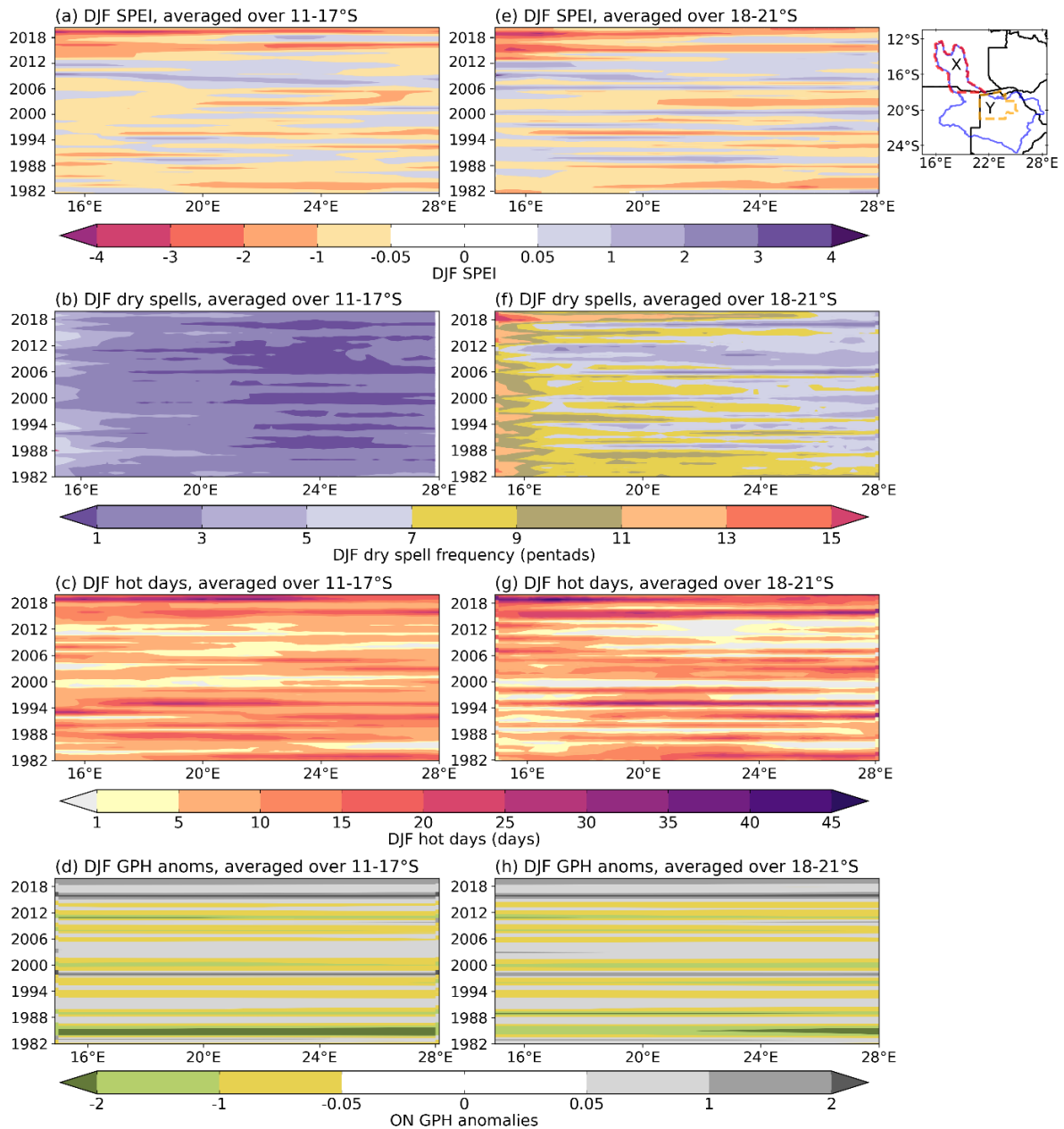
3436 In DJF, the post-2013 period also tends to show mainly negative SPEI, more dry spells and
 3437 hot days (particularly in the western longitudes) and a stronger Botswana High (**Figure 6.8**)

3438 but the signal is not as strong as it is for ON. A period of positive (relatively moist) SPEI
3439 (**Figures 6.8a,e**) is evident over much of the region during 2006-2012, which corresponds to
3440 a weaker Botswana High (**Figures 6.8d,h**). Such quasi-decadal periods of weaker and
3441 stronger Botswana High are consistent with earlier work (Reason, 2019). **Figure 6.8** also
3442 shows co-occurrence of hotter, drier, stronger than average Botswana High and large negative
3443 SPEI during strong El Niño events like 1982/83, 2002/03, 2015/16, and co-occurrence of
3444 cooler, wetter, weaker than average Botswana High and large positive SPEI during La Niña
3445 events such as 1988/89, 1999/00, 2011/12, particularly for Ngamiland but to a lesser extent
3446 the north catchment. Note that there are some prominent exceptions to this general pattern of
3447 drier (wetter) conditions during El Niño (La Niña) (Lindesay, 1988; Nicholson and Kim,
3448 1997; Reason et al., 2000) such as the very strong 1997/98 El Niño and the moderately strong
3449 2009/10 El Niño when the expected droughts did not occur over subtropical southern Africa
3450 (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al., 2018; Driver et al.,
3451 2019). During the 1997/98 and 2009/10 El Niño events, the Angola Low which acts as the
3452 source for the tropical-extratropical cloud bands did not weaken as expected during a typical
3453 El Niño event (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al., 2018;
3454 Driver et al., 2019).

3455

3456 For MA (not shown), the negative SPEI epoch after 2013 that is evident in ON and DJF is not
3457 as clear. Also, the ENSO relationship is less obvious in MA which is not surprising since
3458 ENSO events often weaken or reverse sign in April and the teleconnection patterns to
3459 southern Africa break down.

3460



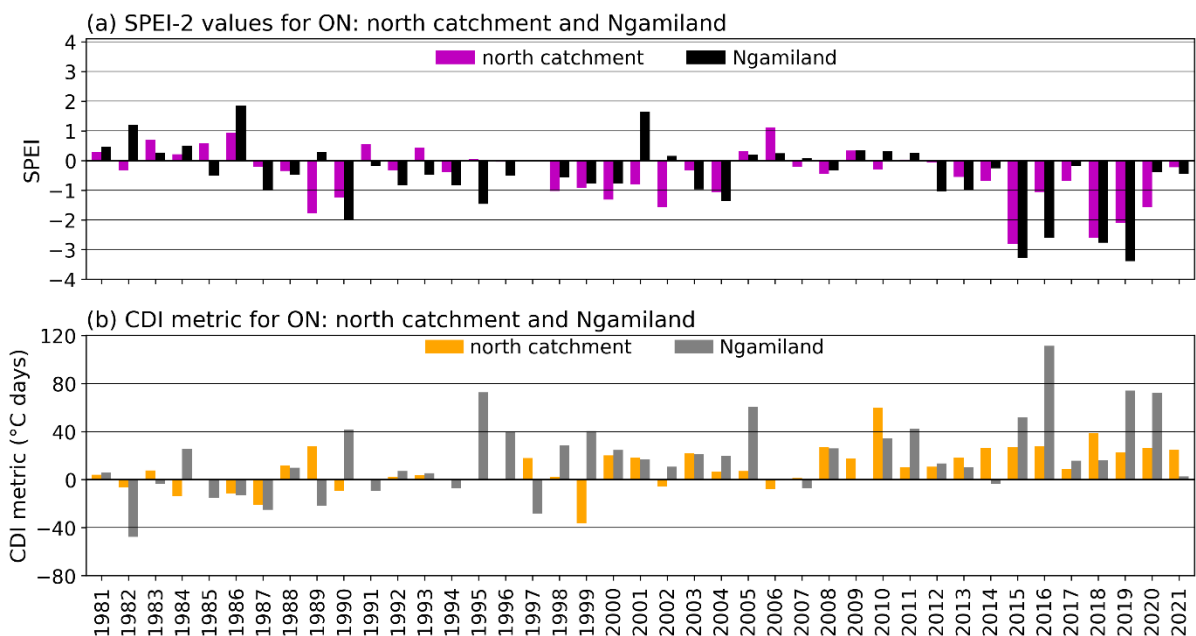
3461

3462 **Figure 6.8** First column: (a) Evolution of SPEI-3 values for DJF (DJF SPEI) averaged over
 3463 latitudes 11°-17°S; (b)-(d) Dry spell frequencies, hot day frequencies and 500 hPa
 3464 geopotential height (GPH) anomalies (anoms), respectively, for DJF, averaged over the same
 3465 latitudes as in (a). Second column: (e)-(h) are as in (a)-(d), respectively, but averaged over
 3466 latitudes 18°-21°S. Latitudes in the first and second columns correspond with the north
 3467 catchment and Ngamiland, respectively, i.e., red (orange) dashed polygon marked X (Y) to
 3468 the right of panel (e). The year 1981 means December 1981 to February 1982, and so on.

3469

3470 To further highlight the multi-year post-2013 period, **Figures 6.9a-b** plot time series of SPEI
 3471 and the Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for ON, averaged over the north

3472 catchment and over Ngamiland. The CDI metric derived in this study as the product of the
 3473 maximum dry spell duration with the anomaly in maximum temperature (*Section 6.2*), gives
 3474 another measure of the severity of a dry-hot spell. While there are some exceptions, ON
 3475 seasons with negative SPEI (drought) generally correspond to ones of positive CDI. As
 3476 suggested by **Figure 6.7**, the period from 2013 onwards experienced mostly large negative
 3477 SPEI values ≤ -1 (reflecting drought conditions) in both regions (**Figure 6.9a**). Almost all of
 3478 these seasons received well below average rainfall totals (shown in the next section).
 3479 Similarly, the post-2013 period shows large positive values in the CDI metric over both
 3480 regions, which is consistent with the hot conditions that are accompanied by many dry spells
 3481 (**Figures 6.9a-b**). However, for this parameter, the positive anomalies in fact began a few
 3482 years before 2013. While there are other multi-year runs of the same signed anomaly in both
 3483 records, the negative SPEI/positive CDI period after 2013 stands out with large magnitudes
 3484 (severe drought) particularly for Ngamiland. In particular, very large negative SPEI values of
 3485 at least -2.5 occurred in 4 (2) ON seasons over Ngamiland (north catchment) during 2013-
 3486 2021. For CDI, almost all the large positive values over the north catchment occurred after
 3487 2010 while for Ngamiland, 5 of the 7 largest values are found then. Hence the common 2013-
 3488 2021 period is analysed further in the next section.
 3489



3490
 3491 **Figure 6.9** (a) SPEI-2 values for ON for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
 3492 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for ON.
 3493

3494 **Table 6.1** shows that SPEI is not significantly correlated with ENSO over either region in
 3495 ON. Since ENSO tends to impact rainfall strongly over southern Africa from December to
 3496 March (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000), the lack of a significant correlation is not
 3497 surprising. Nevertheless, three ON El Niño seasons after 2013 (2015, 2016, 2019)
 3498 experienced very negative SPEI values as well as large positive values of the CDI metric.
 3499 **Table 6.1** does however show a significant correlation of both the SPEI and the CDI metric
 3500 with the Botswana High for both regions. This regional circulation system is centred over the
 3501 north catchment and Ngamiland during October and November (**Figures 6.5a-b**) implying
 3502 severe dry-hot spells and more negative SPEI conditions for seasons when the high is
 3503 stronger than average.

3504

3505 **Table 6.1** Correlations of SPEI and the Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric, averaged
 3506 over the north catchment and Ngamiland, with ENSO, Botswana High (BH) and Angola Low
 3507 (AL), for ON, DJF and MA (1981-2021). Only significant correlations at $\alpha = 0.05$ are shown

		north catchment			Ngamiland		
		<u>ENSO</u>	<u>BH</u>	<u>AL</u>	<u>ENSO</u>	<u>BH</u>	<u>AL</u>
ON	SPEI		-0.54			-0.66	
	CDI metric		0.48			0.56	
DJF	SPEI	-0.41	-0.52	-0.36	-0.63	-0.71	-0.55
	CDI metric				0.50	0.59	0.47
MA	SPEI	-0.38	-0.65		-0.41	-0.36	
	CDI metric		0.39		0.50	0.37	

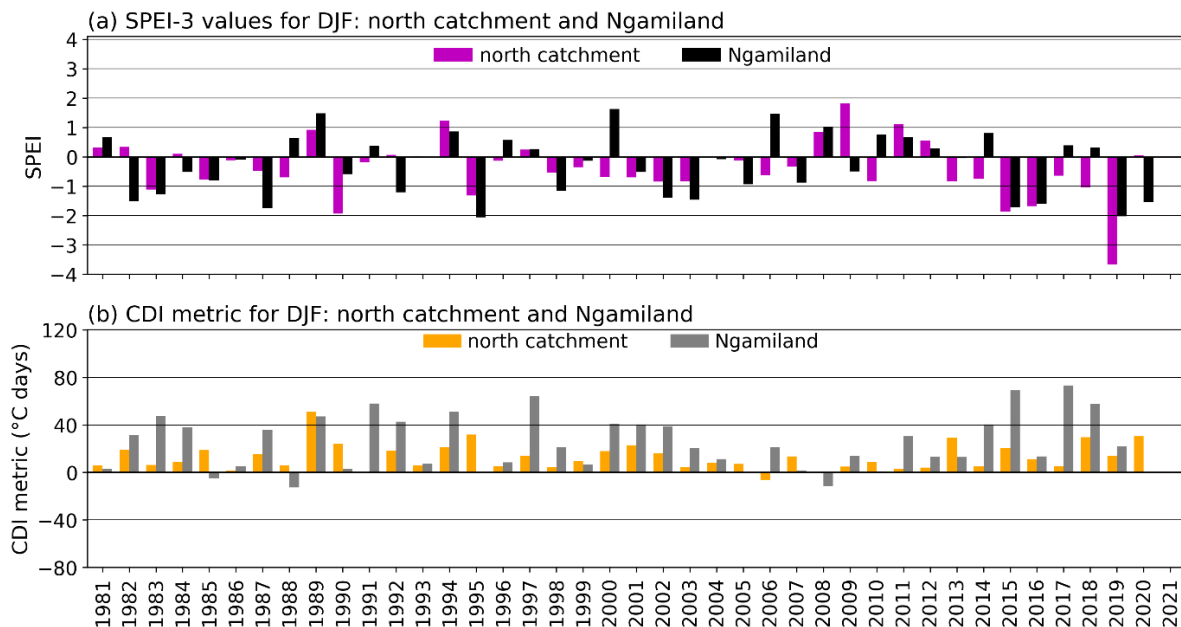
3508

3509 In the other seasons, **Table 6.1** shows that Ngamiland shows significant correlations of both
 3510 SPEI and CDI with the Botswana High, the Angola Low and ENSO. As already mentioned, a
 3511 stronger Botswana High implies more regional subsidence and hence hotter, drier conditions.
 3512 On the other hand, a weaker Angola Low implies less convection in the tropical source region
 3513 of the cloud bands (Hart et al., 2010) and thus clearer skies as well as hotter, drier conditions.
 3514 For the north catchment, SPEI is correlated significantly with all three indices but not CDI. In
 3515 MA, there are no longer any significant correlations for the Angola Low in either region
 3516 while those with ENSO and with the Botswana High are mostly weaker than those found for
 3517 DJF. The significant correlations of the Angola Low with the SPEI that occur in DJF but not
 3518 in MA could be related to the fact that this Angola Low is strongest in January and February

3519 (Munday and 688 Washington, 2017; Howard and Washington, 2018). Based on **Table 6.1**, it
 3520 appears that the Botswana High-drought relationship over both regions is stronger than the
 3521 ENSO-drought relationship in all three seasons.

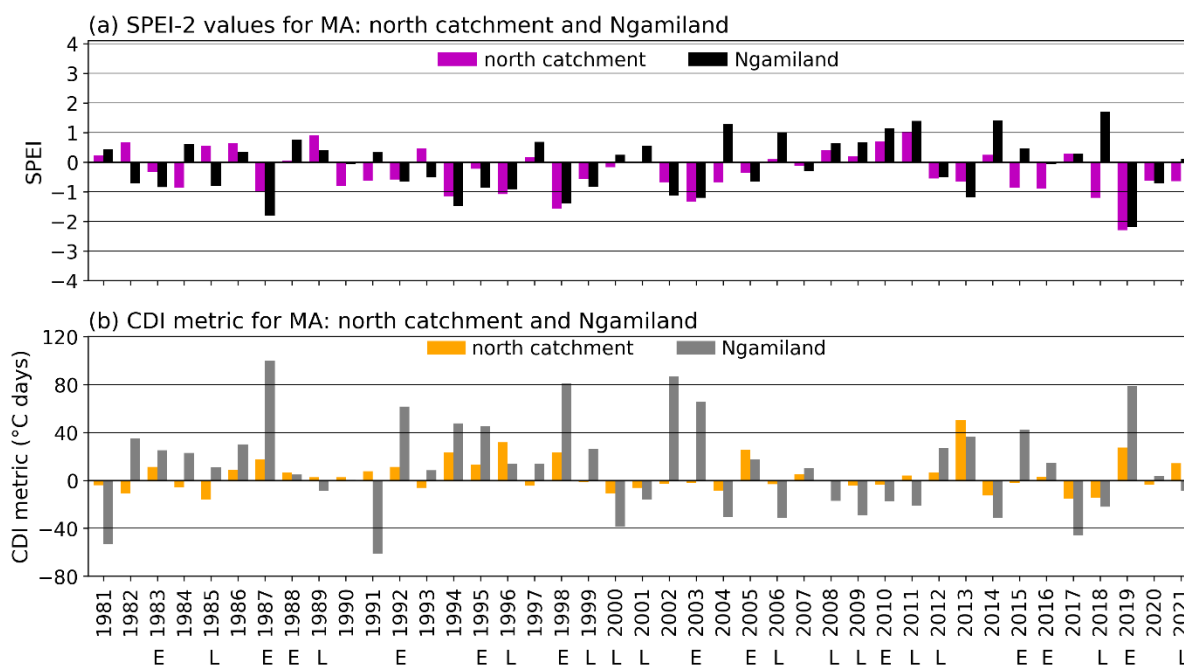
3522
 3523 For completeness, **Figures 6.10-6.11** plot time series of SPEI and CDI over both regions for
 3524 DJF and MA. In DJF, the post-2013 period of negative SPEI/positive CDI (severe drought) is
 3525 largely present, but it is not as clear as in the ON season (**Figure 6.9**). For MA, this pattern is
 3526 even less coherent. Since both regions experienced at least two DJF and MA seasons post-
 3527 2013 which received well above average rainfall amounts (not shown), whereas this did not
 3528 happen in ON, the post-2013 drought period is less well expressed in the mid- and late
 3529 summer months. To confirm that the CDI metric may help evaluate the contribution of the
 3530 temperature anomaly to the drought events, additional plots were made (not shown), i.e.,
 3531 plots of maximum temperature anomalies together with the SPEI. Temporal distribution
 3532 patterns of maximum temperature anomalies were found to be very similar to those for the
 3533 CDI metric, with the post-2013 period also standing out particularly in ON. Thus, the
 3534 temporal distribution patterns of maximum temperature anomalies were in support of the use
 3535 of the CDI metric to evaluate the contribution of the temperature anomaly to the drought
 3536 events.

3537



3538
 3539 **Figure 6.10** SPEI-3 values for DJF for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
 3540 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for DJF. The year
 3541 1981 means December 1981 to February 1982, and so on.

3542



3543

3544 **Figure 6.11** SPEI-2 values for MA for the period 1981-2021, averaged over the north
3545 catchment and Ngamiland. (b) Cumulative Drought Intensity (CDI) metric for MA. Notation
3546 below the x axis in (b): E, El Niño; L, La Niña.

3547

3548 6.3.4 Circulation anomaly patterns associated with the 2013-2021 epoch during ON

3549

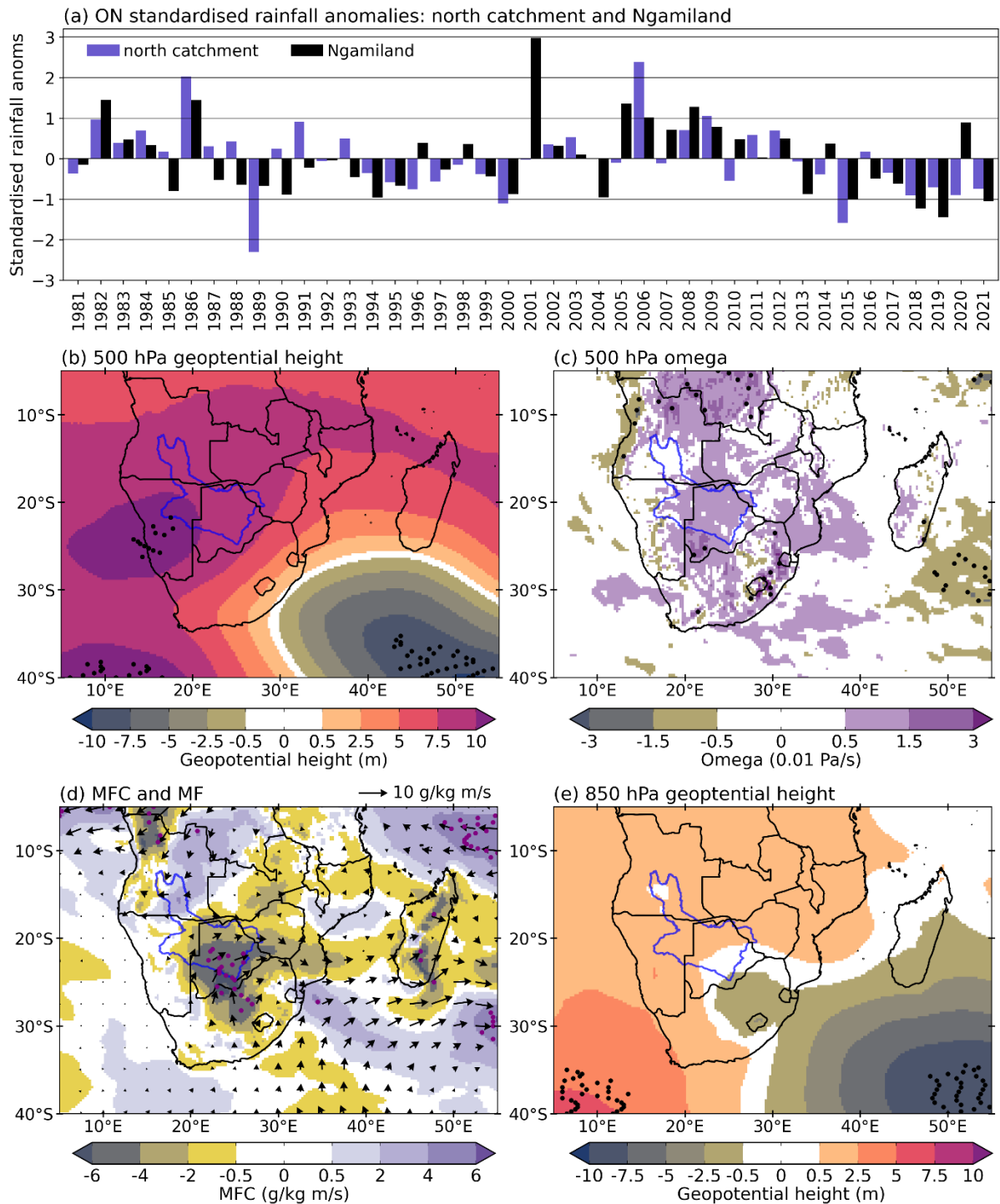
3550 To help explain the 2013-2021 period of very large negative SPEI/positive CDI values and
3551 hence severe drought during this epoch in ON, anomaly patterns in rainfall, SST and various
3552 circulation fields are examined (**Figure 6.12**). **Figure 6.12a** plots ON standardised rainfall
3553 anomalies over the north catchment and Ngamiland which highlight the low rainfall amounts
3554 received during the epoch. Comparison of **Figure 6.12b** with **Figures 6.5a-b** indicates that
3555 the Botswana High was anomalously strong as well as shifted southwestwards during ON
3556 2013-2021 relative to climatology. This stronger and southwestward shifted Botswana High
3557 during the period suggests unfavourable conditions for the source region of the tropical-
3558 extratropical cloud bands, implying less cloudy and hotter/drier conditions. Furthermore,
3559 there are positive anomalies at 850 hPa over Angola/Namibia (**Figure 6.12e**) indicating a
3560 weaker Angola Low, also unfavourable for tropical convection and cloud band development
3561 (Mulenga et al., 2003; Cook et al., 2004; Crétat et al., 2018), and hence drought.
3562 Unfavourable conditions also existed for the midlatitude input into these cloud bands (Hart et
3563 al., 2010) due to the presence of anticyclonic anomalies southwest of South Africa which

3564 would act to weaken and steer cold fronts further south than average. **Figure 6.12c** shows
3565 increased mid-level subsidence over almost all of subtropical southern Africa, again
3566 favourable for drier and hotter conditions during ON 2013-2021.

3567

3568 Much of southern Africa, including Ngamiland and the southern two-thirds of the ORB
3569 experienced low-level moisture flux divergence during 2013-2021 relative to climatology
3570 (**Figure 6.12d**), again suggesting hotter and drier conditions. The northwest-southeast
3571 diagonal band of increased divergence across Botswana and South Africa is consistent with
3572 reduced cloud band activity over the mainland and favourable for drought. Over the
3573 southwest Indian Ocean, there are westerly anomalies implying less moisture advected
3574 towards the mainland and drier, hotter conditions. Over Angola, there are easterly anomalies
3575 consistent with the weaker Angola Low and less moisture advected from the tropical
3576 southeast Atlantic towards the source region of the cloud bands, again implying hotter and
3577 drier conditions.

3578



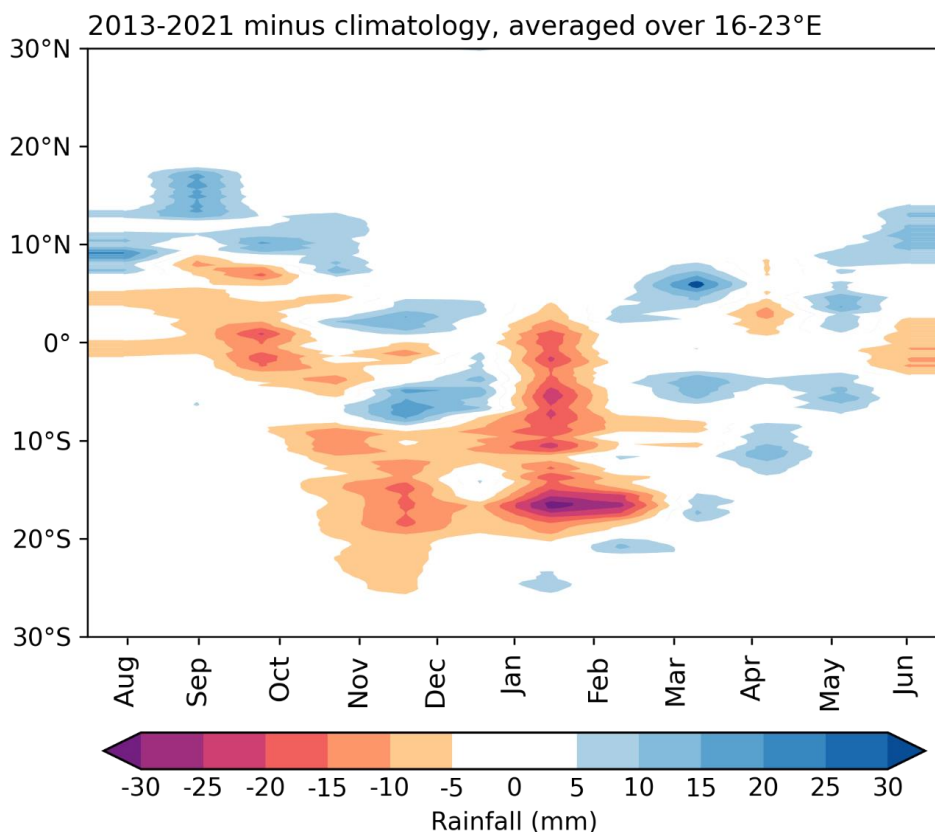
3579

3580 **Figure 6.12** (a) Standardised rainfall anomalies (anoms) averaged over the north catchment
 3581 and Ngamiland, for ON 1981-2021. (b) Anomalies of 500 hPa geopotential height for ON
 3582 2013-2021 with respect to 1981-2021 climatology, over southern Africa. (c) As in (b) but for
 3583 omega. (d) As in (b) but for 850 hPa moisture flux convergence (MFC; shading) and moisture
 3584 flux (MF; vectors). (e) As in (b) but for 850 hPa geopotential height. The blue polygon in (b)-
 3585 (d) is as in Figure 6.1, and areas with statistically significant anomalies based on bootstrap
 3586 95% confidence level are denoted with stippling.

3587

3588 **Figure 6.13** shows anomalies in the annual cycle of the tropical rain-belt for 2013-2021
3589 relative to the climatology plotted in **Figure 6.4**. It is clear that over the ORB latitudes of
3590 11°-24°S in October-November the rain-belt remained equatorwards of its mean position
3591 during 2013-2021 leading to wetter conditions in the 5°-9°S band and considerably drier over
3592 the ORB region, including the Ngamiland latitudes of ~18°-21°S. The drier conditions are
3593 also clearly apparent in this latitude band in January and February but not in March and
3594 April. Overall, **Figure 6.13** implies a drier early and mid-summer in the 2013-2021 period,
3595 with some evidence of wetter conditions at the end of the summer rainy season south of the
3596 equator relative to the mean. Taken together with **Figure 6.12c**, **Figure 6.13** implies a
3597 stronger CAB with a wetter near-equatorial region north of the CAB and, further south,
3598 drier/hotter conditions over the ORB.

3599



3600

3601 **Figure 6.13** Monthly average of the African tropical rain-belt for the period 2013-2021
3602 minus the climatology (1981-2021) shown in Figure 6.4.

3603

3604 SST anomalies during 2013-2021 relative to climatology (not shown) indicate significant
3605 cool anomalies in the southwest Indian Ocean which have previously been associated with

3606 reduced summer rainfall over southern Africa (Reason and Mulenga, 1999). Significant cool
3607 anomalies are also present in the subtropical South Atlantic, also previously associated with
3608 drier summers over southern Africa (Vigaud et al., 2009). Over the tropical Pacific and
3609 tropical Indian Oceans, relatively weak El Niño-like conditions are present in 2013-2021
3610 relative to climatology. Typically, El Niño summers are dry over most of southern Africa
3611 (Lindesay, 1988; Nicholson and Kim, 1997; Reason et al. 2000; Reason and Jagadheesha,
3612 2005; Blamey et al., 2018), hence are consistent with the drier and hotter conditions during
3613 the epoch. It is also known that decadal modulation of ENSO is important for decadal rainfall
3614 variability over southern Africa through atmospheric variability, but the decadal SST
3615 variability in the southwest Indian and southeast Atlantic Oceans also contributes to the
3616 rainfall variability by modulating the overlying atmosphere on a decadal timescale (Morioka
3617 et al., 2015; Dieppois et al., 2016, 2019).

3618

3619 **6.4 Discussion and conclusions**

3620

3621 This study has examined spatial mean patterns in dry spell frequencies and in 90th percentiles
3622 of maximum temperature, as well as relationships with the Botswana High and the African
3623 tropical rain-belt whose southern edge position is marked by the Congo Air Boundary (CAB;
3624 Howard and Washington, 2019). Howard and Washington (2019) found that as the CAB
3625 collapses in November/December, the moist Congo air is then able to penetrate farther
3626 poleward, resulting in the poleward shift of the maximum in tropical rainfall from the tropics
3627 into southern African subtropics. Consistent with this finding, the monthly progression of
3628 high dry spell frequencies has also been found to shift in a poleward direction, from October
3629 through until February/March. Additionally, the poleward shift in the monthly progression of
3630 high dry spell frequencies has been found to align with the Botswana High (Reason, 2016;
3631 Driver and Reason, 2017). This mid-level anticyclone, like the maximum in tropical rainfall,
3632 shifts poleward in spring so that by October, while it is centred over the northern half of the
3633 Okavango River Basin (ORB) and adjoining areas, the diagonal gradient of dry spells
3634 (Thoithi et al., 2021) is strong and located furthest east.

3635

3636 As the Botswana High continues with its poleward movement through until
3637 January/February, the meridional gradient of dry spells (Thoithi et al., 2021) in the Limpopo
3638 River valley becomes more and more prominent. At the same time, the area of greatest
3639 numbers of hot days over southern Africa shifts south from northern Namibia/northern

3640 Botswana in October-November to the southern parts of these countries and the Northern
3641 Cape province (South Africa) in December-February, and thus in both seasons is located
3642 beneath the southern margins of the Botswana High. When the Botswana High retreats
3643 northward in March/April, high dry spell frequencies occur over most of southern Africa and
3644 are distributed roughly like in October/November, with again the area of greatest hot day
3645 numbers shifting back northwards. The alignment of the monthly evolution of dry spell
3646 frequencies with the African tropical rain-belt and Botswana High helps give insight into the
3647 evolution of rainfall through the summer half of the year over subtropical southern Africa.
3648 The alignment of regions of high numbers in hot days and dry spell gradients identifies areas
3649 that are prone to severe desiccation during the summer half of the year such as Ngamiland
3650 and the southern half of the ORB as well as the Limpopo River Basin. Staple crop farming
3651 (e.g., maize) in these parts of subtropical southern Africa is therefore more risky here than in
3652 most other areas.

3653

3654 Latitude-time plots over the longitudes of southern Africa bounding the north catchment and
3655 Ngamiland regions of the ORB show substantial interannual variability in the SPEI,
3656 Botswana High strength, and in frequencies of dry spells and hot days. The period during
3657 2013-2021 stands out as one of particularly large negative anomalies in the SPEI, increased
3658 dry spell and hot day numbers and a stronger Botswana High, and hence drought conditions
3659 during the ON season, and to lesser extent in DJF. Such quasi-decadal variability has
3660 previously been noted in the Botswana High (Reason, 2019). A Cumulative Drought Intensity
3661 (CDI) metric, which combines the duration of the season's longest dry spell together with the
3662 anomaly in maximum temperature during that dry spell, also highlights the post-2013 period
3663 as being unusually severe. Thus, the ON 2013-2021 period was chosen as a case study for
3664 which it was found that the regional circulation anomalies were unfavourable for convection
3665 and cloud band development and instead conducive for hotter and drier conditions. These
3666 anomalies included a stronger and southward shifted Botswana High, a weaker Angola Low,
3667 and low-level divergence over most of subtropical southern Africa.

3668

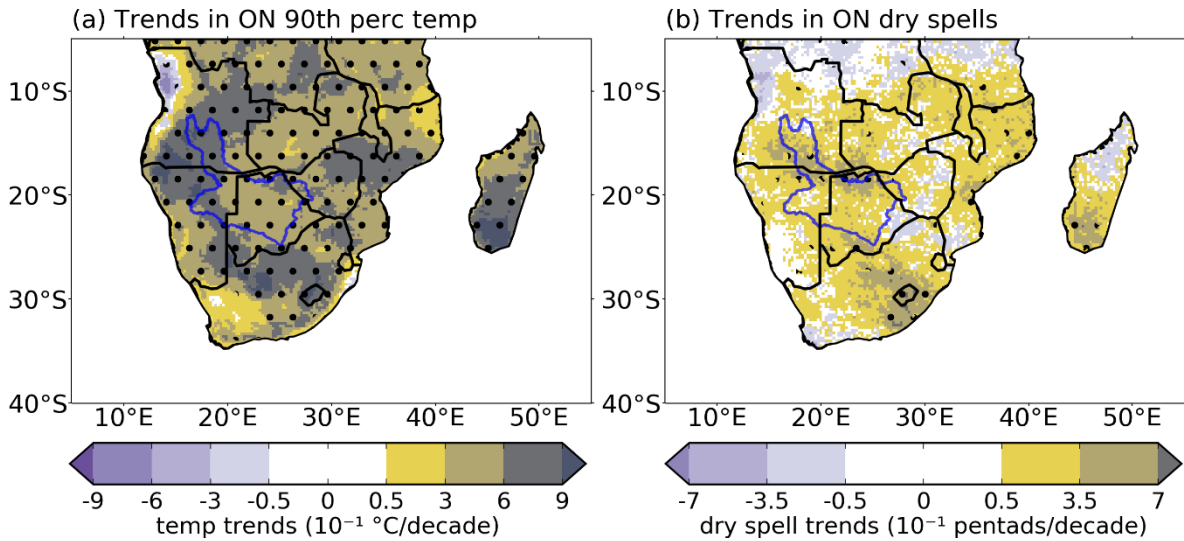
3669 Correlations of the Botswana High or the Niño3.4 index with the SPEI and with the CDI
3670 derived for the north catchment and Ngamiland regions of the ORB indicate stronger
3671 relationships with the former variable than with ENSO. This result suggests that seasonal
3672 forecasting efforts over southern Africa may need to pay more attention to regional
3673 circulation features in addition to ENSO. Climate models should realistically simulate

3674 parameters such as geopotential heights to better predict regional circulation features such as
3675 the Botswana High and Angola Low. The ENSO-rainfall relationship over subtropical
3676 southern Africa is nonlinear with some strong El Niño events (e.g., 1997/98, 2009/10) not
3677 producing the expected summer drought. Evidence has been provided that these anomalous
3678 ENSO cases tend to be associated with regional circulation features (the Angola Low, the
3679 Botswana High) not being impacted to the same extent as during other ENSO events and thus
3680 the expected rainfall response is muted (Reason and Jagadheesha, 2005; Blamey et al., 2018;
3681 Driver et al., 2019). As already mentioned, the reason why these regional circulation features
3682 did not weaken during the 1997/98 and 2009/10 El Niño events could be related to the fact
3683 that ENSO impacts may be complicated by SST patterns in the neighbouring Indian and
3684 Atlantic Oceans, which may influence the circulation and rainfall patterns over southern
3685 Africa either independent of ENSO (Reason, 2001a; Washington and Preston, 2006), or both
3686 partially dependent on ENSO (Goddard and Graham, 1999; Hoell et al., 2015), and which
3687 may also oppose or reinforce ENSO impacts (Reason and Smart, 2015; Hoell et al., 2017).

3688

3689 On longer time scales, if the early summer drier and hotter conditions persist over the ORB,
3690 they are likely to adversely impact crops and livestock (Guilpart et al., 2017) as well as
3691 worsen surface water losses from sources like the ORB (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). Thus,
3692 increased water shortages and dying out of sensitive ecosystems could occur. Climate models
3693 project a strong early summer drying over southern Africa (IPCC, 2021; Lazenby et al., 2018;
3694 Munday and Washington, 2019; Wainwright et al., 2021). Evident in the observational record
3695 are strong increasing trends in the number of hot days over almost all of southern Africa in
3696 ON as well in dry spell frequency although the latter are only significant over the southern
3697 part of the northern ORB region and parts of eastern South Africa (**Figure 6.14**). **Figure 6.15**
3698 suggests that these increasing trends in hot days may be related to the significant
3699 strengthening trend of the Botswana High during ON. There are also browning trends in
3700 NDVI over Ngamiland and parts of the northern ORB (not shown). These trends in hot day
3701 frequencies are consistent with the general warming trends found in other studies over
3702 southern Africa (Barros and Field, 2014; Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et al., 2018; Meque
3703 et al., 2022; Moses et al., 2022).

3704



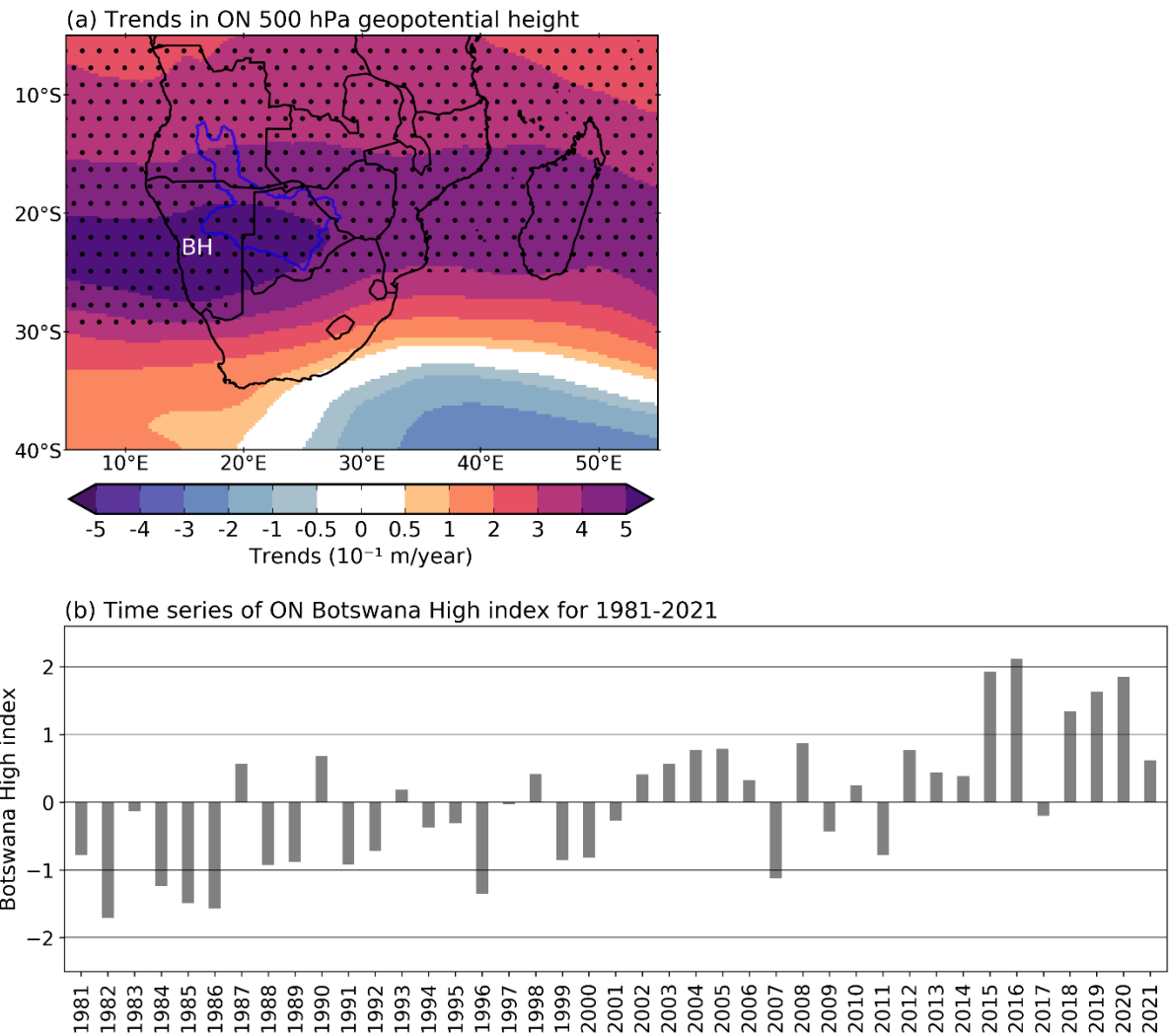
3705

3706 **Figure 6.14** (a) Trends in 90th percentiles (perc) of maximum temperatures (temp) for ON,
 3707 for the period 1981-2021 over southern Africa. (b) Trends in dry spell frequencies for ON.
 3708 Stippling denotes areas with significant trends at $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in Figure
 3709 6.1.

3710

3711 Taken together with the climate model projections, these trends suggest that the early summer
 3712 period may become increasingly challenging for agricultural and water management purposes
 3713 over many parts of subtropical southern Africa. It may be suggested that seasonal forecasting
 3714 efforts during the ON season, when the summer rains typically start, should also focus on
 3715 regional circulation features such as the Botswana High since ENSO signals over southern
 3716 Africa region are typically much weaker in early than in mid- or late summer.

3717



3718

3719 **Figure 6.15** (a) Spatial trends in ON 500 hPa geopotential height for the period 1981-2021
 3720 showing trend in the Botswana High (BH). Stippling denotes areas with significant trends at
 3721 $\alpha = 0.05$. The blue polygon is as in Figure 6.1. (b) ON time series of Botswana High index
 3722 (defined in the text) for the period 1981-2021. Trend slope (trend line unshown) = 0.06
 3723 m/year, significant at $\alpha = 0.05$.

3724

3725 **Chapter 7: Summary and conclusions**

3726

3727 The main aim of the thesis has been firstly to better understand potential relationships among
3728 climate, Normalised Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) and river discharge in the
3729 Okavango River Basin (ORB) region, their variability and trends (**Chapter 4**). Following
3730 that, the thesis has examined extreme rainfall events over the region (**Chapter 5**) and, at the
3731 other end of the spectrum, drought and extreme temperatures (**Chapter 6**). The thesis also
3732 aimed to better understand potential links of these variables with climate modes such as El
3733 Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and regional systems such as the Botswana High.
3734 Potential trends in the various rainfall and temperature metrics were also examined. The
3735 analysis focused on the extended summer (October-April), during which the region receives
3736 most of its rainfall.

3737

3738 The climate of the ORB and of subtropical southern Africa in general, is complex in the sense
3739 that it responds to several factors like ENSO in the tropical Pacific (e.g., Lindesay, 1988;
3740 Reason et al., 2000; Blamey et al., 2018; Hart et al., 2018) and regional systems like the
3741 Botswana High (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017), hence it is not well understood.
3742 There is high spatiotemporal variability, with recurring climate extremes such as droughts,
3743 hot days and floods brought about by extreme rainfall events (e.g., Tyson, 1986; Reason et
3744 al., 2006; Meque et al., 2022). Influences of climate modes such as ENSO on these climate
3745 extremes have not been well studied over the ORB region, which may have been due to
3746 significant shortage of high-resolution observational data. The Botswana High has been
3747 found previously to have a relationship with dry spell frequencies over southern Africa
3748 (Driver and Reason, 2017), but this relationship has not been examined over the ORB region
3749 until now. Over this ORB region, it is thought that vegetation patterns are influenced by
3750 rainfall and hydrological conditions (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006; Revermann et al., 2016),
3751 but it is not well understood whether climate influences on vegetation in the wetter regions of
3752 the ORB in the north differ from those in the drier regions in the south. Warming trends (e.g.,
3753 Maúre et al., 2018; Meque et al., 2022) and early summer drying (e.g., IPCC, 2021; Munday
3754 and Washington, 2019; Wainwright et al., 2021) found over southern Africa by previous
3755 studies may have adverse impacts on rain-fed subsistence farming, water availability and
3756 ecosystems, hence there was a need to assess these trends over particular regions of the
3757 subcontinent like the ORB.

3758

3759 To better understand relationships between climatic variables (rainfall, temperature), NDVI
3760 and river discharge over the ORB region, as well as relationships of these variables with
3761 climate modes and regional circulation systems, and trends in the variables, all these were
3762 examined in **Chapter 4** of the thesis. Given the size of the domain, for climate influences on
3763 NDVI, the study area was divided by 18.9°S latitude (L18) into a high rainfall zone north of
3764 L18 and a low rainfall zone south of L18, based on the mean rainfall maps.

3765

3766 **Chapter 4** found pronounced interannual variability in rainfall and temperature, reflected in
3767 NDVI and river discharge. This variability compares well with other studies (e.g., Murray-
3768 Hudson et al., 2006; Hughes et al., 2011). Monthly lag correlations of rainfall with river
3769 discharge were incoherent, but for temperature-discharge, there were significant inverse
3770 correlations at 0 and 1-month lags. NDVI had significant positive 1-2-month lag correlations
3771 with rainfall over both south and north of L18, with generally stronger correlations over the
3772 former than over the latter region. Similarly, NDVI-temperature correlations were generally
3773 stronger over the area south than north of L18. The 1-2-month lag of the NDVI response to
3774 rainfall over the two regions compares well with the results of Nicholson and Farrar et al.
3775 (1994) obtained over Botswana. Stronger NDVI correlations south than north of L18 may be
3776 related to differences in vegetation type, with the latter region having a greater proportion of
3777 thicker woodland than that south of L18 where there is more grassland (e.g., Kgathi et al.,
3778 2006; Revermann et al., 2016). Grasslands are more sensitive to rainfall changes than
3779 woodlands (Erasmi et al., 2009), hence the stronger correlations south than north of L18. On
3780 seasonal scales, there were significant positive 1-season lag correlations between January-
3781 April (JFMA) rainfall and either May-September (MJJAS) NDVI or river discharge,
3782 reflecting that the latter two variables essentially respond to the previous season's rainfall
3783 (MJJAS rainfall is minimal). Correlations of October-December (OND) rainfall with JFMA
3784 NDVI, and of OND rainfall and discharge, were also significant but weaker.

3785

3786 As found using correlation analysis, regression slopes between rainfall and NDVI were
3787 mainly significant over the area south but not north of L18, which is related to the more
3788 grasslands south of L18 being more sensitive to rainfall changes than the more woodlands
3789 north of L18. Overall, regression slopes showed that NDVI-rainfall and NDVI-temperature
3790 relationships are statistically different over the two regions. The sensitivity of NDVI to
3791 rainfall over the area south of L18 is consistent with other studies for semi-arid African

3792 regions where water availability is a constraint for vegetation growth (Malo and Nicholson,
3793 1990; Farrar et al., 1994; Camberlin et al., 2007; Richard et al., 2008, 2012).

3794

3795 Significant correlations of climate modes [ENSO, subtropical Indian Ocean Dipole (SIOD)]
3796 and the Botswana High with NDVI, rainfall and temperature were found, but the Angola Low
3797 correlations were generally weak. The correlations of ENSO and the Botswana High with
3798 rainfall (temperature) were negative (positive), those for the SIOD were positive (negative),
3799 and the NDVI showed significant (negative) correlations mainly with ENSO. These
3800 correlations indicate the sensitivity of the ORB climate system to various climate modes
3801 which tend to be stronger in JFMA than in OND, reflecting the seasonal-phase locking of
3802 ENSO and the SIOD. Stronger ENSO-rainfall correlations in JFMA are consistent with other
3803 authors who found ENSO to impact strongly over southern Africa during the summer
3804 (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et al., 2000; Reason and Jagadsheesha, 2005). Correlations of the
3805 Southern Annular Mode (SAM) with NDVI, rainfall and temperature were found to be weak
3806 and no significant correlations were found between river discharge and the various climate
3807 modes.

3808

3809 Consistent with other studies over southern Africa that El Niño events do not always lead to
3810 severe droughts (Reason and Jagadsheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al.,
3811 2018; Driver et al., 2019), it was found in **Chapter 4** that the 1987/1988 El Niño, not
3812 previously analysed, did not generate the expected drought conditions. Positive anomalies in
3813 low-level moisture flux convergence and SST in the tropical southeast Atlantic Ocean
3814 favoured wetter conditions over the ORB region in this summer rather than the expected El
3815 Niño drought. Other authors also found positive SST anomalies in the tropical southeast
3816 Atlantic to be associated with wetter conditions (e.g., Rouault et al., 2003; Reason and Smart,
3817 2015).

3818

3819 The period 2006-2013 was found to be substantially wet and greener compared to the period
3820 1999-2005 which was dry and browner. Unlike most studies focusing on these well-known
3821 quasi-decadal to decadal wet and dry spells of subtropical southern Africa climate (Tyson et
3822 al., 1975; Tyson, 1986; Wolski et al., 2012; Malherbe et al., 2014; Reason, 2016) during the
3823 mid or late summer rather than OND, in **Chapter 4**, the signal was stronger in OND, hence
3824 this season was chosen to analyse potential mechanisms associated with this signal. The
3825 wetter and greener OND 2006-2013 epoch was related to warmer SST in the tropical

3826 southeast Atlantic (as well as La Niña Modoki conditions), increased low-level moisture flux
3827 convergence and uplift over Angola and western Zambia relative to the preceding dry and
3828 browner 1999-2005 dry epoch.

3829

3830 Trend analysis in **Chapter 4** revealed significant greening trends in NDVI south of L18,
3831 particularly in summer, while north of L18, there was a strong browning trend in MJJAS. The
3832 greening trends are consistent with Wingate et al. (2019b) and Thoithi et al. (2021) who
3833 found significant greening trends over parts of Namibia and Botswana in December-February
3834 (DJF). Rainfall trends were significantly increasing over most of the area north of L18 in
3835 OND and over central Botswana while JFMA showed significant wetting over most of the
3836 area south of L18 and northwestern Namibia. These trends are consistent with New et al.
3837 (2006) who found an increase in average daily rainfall. Almost the entire region shows
3838 significant warming mainly in OND. This warming trend which is consistent with other
3839 studies over southern Africa and more broadly over Africa (Barros and Field, 2014;
3840 Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et al., 2018), may worsen water losses from the region with
3841 adverse impacts on vegetation growth including crops, water availability, ecosystems and
3842 tourism.

3843

3844 **Chapter 5** analysed extreme rainfall events over the ORB. Since many rainfall events
3845 typically extend beyond river basin boundaries, a larger region was chosen to perform the
3846 analysis, i.e., a box in western central southern Africa (WCSA). Attention was also paid to
3847 extreme event spatial characteristics over two sections of the ORB. One was the north
3848 catchment, where most of the ORB streamflow is generated (e.g., Andersson et al., 2003;
3849 Wolski and Murray-Hudson, 2008), and the other was Ngamiland in northwestern Botswana
3850 which contains the world-famous Okavango Delta, where the streamflow terminates.
3851 Although the ORB streamflow is affected mainly by rainfall events that occur over the north
3852 catchment, contributions over the Delta itself can be substantial (Andersson et al., 2003;
3853 Wolski et al., 2006; M. Murray-Hudson, personal communication, 2022).

3854

3855 The analysis focused on extreme rainfall events accumulated over 1-day (DP1) and 3-day
3856 (DP3) periods. Extreme events accumulated over a 2-day period were very similar to the DP3
3857 events, whereas those accumulated over 4-days or longer were rare and hence were not
3858 examined further. Focus was placed on JFMA since OND had a small number of DP1 and

3859 DP3 (14 and 19, respectively) events within the top 200 events when the entire extended
3860 austral summer season was used, hence only results for JFMA are presented in **Chapter 5**.

3861

3862 It was found that the dominant synoptic weather type associated with most of the top 200
3863 DP1 and DP3 (112 and 121, respectively) events in JFMA is the tropical-extratropical cloud
3864 band, consistent with other studies for summer rainfall over southern Africa (e.g.,
3865 Washington and Todd, 1999; Hart et al., 2010, 2013, 2018). Tropical lows (Howard et al.,
3866 2019) also make a large contribution (86 and 74 for DP1 and DP3, respectively, out of the top
3867 200). For DP3, there were a few cases (3) where cloud bands and tropical lows made a joint
3868 contribution. Mesoscale convective systems (MCSs) only make a small contribution to the
3869 top 200 events. Contribution of MCSs may be underestimated since often they are embedded
3870 within other systems like cloud bands, and they tend to be shorter-lived than cloud bands or
3871 tropical lows (Blamey and Reason, 2013; Rapolaki et al., 2019). One DP1 event out of the
3872 top 200 resulted from a cut-off low on 22 April, consistent with other authors that these
3873 weather systems can also lead to large rainfall amounts over a short period of time mainly in
3874 autumn and spring (Singleton and Reason, 2006, 2007).

3875

3876 DP1 frequency shows a significant upward trend consistent with the IPCC (2013) and (2021)
3877 assessments that the frequency and intensity of extreme rainfall events are likely to increase
3878 due to global warming. If this trend persists, it may increase the tendency for flooding with
3879 associated crop and livestock losses. Daily rainfall totals and rain-days receiving >1 mm and
3880 >10 mm also show significant increasing trends over the southern half of the WCSA and
3881 adjoining areas in Namibia, South Africa, Zimbabwe and Zambia. This implies that the
3882 meridional rainfall gradient from Botswana to Zambia may weaken and that the edge of the
3883 tropical rain-belt over northern Botswana may weaken. These trends are consistent with
3884 trends in wet days of 10-30 mm/day in DJF (Thoithi et al., 2021) and with an increase in
3885 average daily rainfall (New et al., 2006).

3886

3887 DP1 and DP3 events show large interannual variability in their frequencies as well as in their
3888 percentage contributions to JFMA seasonal rainfall totals. On average, their contributions are
3889 ~ 10% and ~17%, respectively, but in some seasons can be more than 30% over the WCSA,
3890 implying that they make considerable contributions to water resources. However, as
3891 mentioned above, these events may cause local flooding as well as significant damage to
3892 crops and human settlements. Correlations of rainfall totals with DP1 and DP3 events are

3893 significantly positive and stronger over Ngamiland than over the north catchment, suggesting
3894 that extreme rainfall events are more important to rainfall totals over the former region than
3895 over the latter region.

3896

3897 Consistent with **Chapter 4** and other studies over southern Africa (Lindesay, 1988; Reason et
3898 al., 2000; Driver and Reason, 2017) that ENSO impacts strongly on rainfall totals during
3899 summer, in **Chapter 5**, this climate mode was found to also impact strongly (significantly
3900 positive) on frequencies/intensities of DP1 and DP3 events during JFMA. El Niño (La Niña)
3901 events were found to typically lead to less (more) intense DP1/3 events, and to also lead to
3902 low (high) frequency of these DP1/3 events. Similarly, as found in **Chapter 4** that the
3903 Botswana High impacts strongly on summer rainfall totals, in **Chapter 5**, it was found to also
3904 impact strongly (significantly negative) on JFMA extreme event characteristics. This is
3905 because typically, this circulation system moves south and strengthens during the summer,
3906 leading to less regional subsidence when it is weaker than average and allows more
3907 favourable conditions for convection (Reason, 2016; Driver and Reason, 2017). Other climate
3908 modes (SIOD, SAM, Benguela Niño) as well as the Angola Low, were found to not have
3909 strong relationships with DP1 and DP3 characteristics.

3910

3911 A case study was conducted in **Chapter 5** to better understand contributions of DP1 and DP3
3912 events as well as large-scale circulation anomalies, to the severe flooding that caused
3913 substantial damage to crops and settlements in JFMA 2017 over Ngamiland district which
3914 contains the world-famous Okavango Delta. JFMA 2017 was of interest because it was
3915 ENSO-neutral, and the flooding occurred over Ngamiland but not over the north catchment
3916 where most of the ORB streamflow is generated as mentioned above, which experienced well
3917 below average rainfall.

3918

3919 The case study indicated that JFMA 2017 experienced the largest number of DP3 events in
3920 the WCSA box, i.e., 10 in total in this season alone, of which 8 had their heavy rainfall over
3921 Ngamiland. During the same season, 8 of the 9 DP1 events had their heavy rainfall over
3922 Ngamiland as well. The number of rain-days receiving >10 mm was more than double the
3923 average. For circulation anomalies, during the period 1 January – 8 March 2017, the Angola
3924 Low was anomalously strong. Since this low acts as the tropical source for the tropical-
3925 extratropical cloud bands associated with most of the summer rainfall in the region (Cook et
3926 al., 2004; Hart et al., 2010, 2013, 2018), it is not surprising that these cloud bands caused

3927 many of the DP1 and DP3 events during JFMA 2017. Other circulation anomalies that
3928 contributed to these floods include a weaker than usual Botswana High, increased uplift over
3929 most of the WCSA, and strongly positive SST anomalies in the southwest Indian Ocean,
3930 which previously were linked with above average summer rainfall over many parts of
3931 southern Africa (e.g., Reason and Mulenga, 1999; Behera and Yamagata, 2001; Reason,
3932 2001a).

3933

3934 **Chapter 6** analysed drought metrics and temperature extremes over the ORB region as well
3935 as their links with regional systems such as the Botswana High, to better understand droughts
3936 in this region. The poleward shift in the monthly progression of high dry spell frequencies
3937 from October through until February/March was found to align with the poleward shift in the
3938 monthly progression of the Congo Air Boundary (CAB). The CAB shifts poleward from
3939 August and it eventually breaks down in November/December (Howard and Washington,
3940 2019). These authors found that as long as the CAB has not broken down, it hinders the moist
3941 Congo air associated with the maximum in tropical rainfall from penetrating further poleward
3942 into the southern African subtropics. The poleward shift in the monthly progression of high
3943 dry spell frequencies was also found to align with the Botswana High (Reason, 2016; Driver
3944 and Reason, 2017). Like the maximum in tropical rainfall, the Botswana High shifts poleward
3945 in spring so that by October, while it is centred over the northern half of the ORB and
3946 adjoining areas, the diagonal gradient of dry spells (Thoithi et al., 2021) is strong and located
3947 furthest east. The Botswana High continues to shift poleward until January/February, as do
3948 the areas of greatest numbers of dry spells and hot days. When the Botswana High retreats
3949 northward in March/April, the area of greatest numbers of dry spells and hot days also
3950 retreats equatorwards.

3951

3952 The alignment of the monthly evolution of dry spell frequencies with the African tropical
3953 rain-belt and Botswana High in **Chapter 6**, not previously considered in the literature, helps
3954 provide insight into the evolution of rainfall through the extended summer over subtropical
3955 southern Africa. The alignment of regions of high numbers in hot days and dry spell gradients
3956 identifies areas that are susceptible to severe desiccation such as Ngamiland and the southern
3957 half of the ORB as well as the Limpopo River Basin. In these parts of subtropical southern
3958 Africa, commonly produced crops such as maize may perform more poorly than in most
3959 other areas.

3960

3961 Standardised Precipitation-Evapotranspiration Index (SPEI), Botswana High strength, dry
3962 spell and hot day frequencies exhibit substantial interannual variability over the ORB. The
3963 2013-2021 period in **Chapter 6** (a sharp decrease in OND rainfall after 2013 is also evident
3964 in **Chapter 4, Figure 4.6a**) stands out as one of particularly large negative anomalies in
3965 SPEI, increased hot day and dry spell numbers and a stronger Botswana High, and hence
3966 drought conditions particularly during October-November (ON). The Cumulative Drought
3967 Intensity (CDI) metric, derived from maximum temperature anomaly and maximum dry spell
3968 duration, also highlights the post-2013 period as being unusually severe. NDVI shows
3969 browning trends during this period over Ngamiland and parts of the northern ORB, also
3970 reflecting the drought conditions. A case study of the ON 2013-2021 period revealed that
3971 regional circulation anomalies were conducive for hotter and drier conditions but not for
3972 convection and cloud band development. Some of these anomalies were a stronger and
3973 southward shifted Botswana High, low-level divergence over most of subtropical southern
3974 Africa, and a weaker Angola Low.

3975
3976 Correlations of the Botswana High or the Niño3.4 index with the SPEI (negative correlations)
3977 and with the CDI (positive correlations) over the ORB indicate stronger relationships with the
3978 former variable than with ENSO, suggesting that seasonal forecasting efforts over southern
3979 Africa should not only pay attention to ENSO but also to regional circulation features. Over
3980 this region, the ENSO-rainfall relationship is not linear with some strong El Niño events (e.g.,
3981 1997/98, 2009/10) not producing the anticipated summer drought (e.g., Reason and
3982 Jagadheesha, 2005; Lyon and Mason, 2007; Blamey et al., 2018; Driver et al., 2019). These
3983 papers as well as the results presented in this thesis point to the need to better understand the
3984 roles that regional circulation features like the Botswana High and the Angola Low play in
3985 influencing southern African rainfall during different ENSO events.

3986
3987 Regarding trends in the region, if the early summer drier and hotter conditions that have been
3988 found over the ORB persist, they are likely to negatively impact subsistence farming
3989 (Guilpart et al., 2017), increase water shortages and dying out of sensitive ecosystems
3990 (Murray-Hudson et al., 2006). The observational record also shows strong increasing trends
3991 in the number of hot days over most of southern Africa in ON, and in dry spell frequency
3992 although the latter are only significant over the southern part of the northern ORB region and
3993 parts of eastern South Africa. These trends suggest that the early summer period may become
3994 increasingly challenging for agricultural and water management purposes over many parts of

3995 subtropical southern Africa. **Chapter 6** provided evidence that upward trends in hot days
3996 may be related to the significant strengthening trend of the Botswana High during ON. These
3997 increasing trends in ON hot day frequencies are consistent with the general warming trend in
3998 OND over the ORB region found in **Chapter 4** and with the general warming trend found in
3999 other studies over southern Africa (Engelbrecht et al., 2015; Maúre et al., 2018; Meque et al.,
4000 2022). Similarly, the increasing trends in dry spell frequencies are consistent with climate
4001 model projections of a strong early summer drying over southern Africa (IPCC, 2021;
4002 Munday and Washington, 2019; Wainwright et al., 2021).

4003

4004 This thesis has helped improve understanding of the climate of the ORB region, its climate
4005 variability and trends. A particular focus has been placed on climate extremes over the region
4006 (droughts, hot days and extreme rainfall events) and their relationships with climate modes
4007 and regional circulation systems. Given the vulnerability of the region and the reliance of the
4008 local population on rain-fed agriculture, the results of the thesis may help with the
4009 management of water resources, agricultural activities and the highly biodiverse ecosystems,
4010 as well as for assessing how the region may respond to a globally warming climate. The
4011 results may also be useful for seasonal forecasting. For instance, seasonal forecasting efforts
4012 during the ON season, when the summer rains typically start, should also pay attention to
4013 regional circulation features such as the Botswana High since over southern Africa, ENSO
4014 signals are typically much weaker in early than in mid- or late summer. An important aspect
4015 not considered in this thesis, both from a seasonal forecasting perspective and for climate
4016 prediction, is the ability of climate models to adequately represent the climate of the ORB
4017 region. Although literature exists on the ability of CMIP models to capture important features
4018 such as the Angola Low (Munday and Washington, 2017) or cloud bands over southern
4019 Africa (James et al., 2020), these models do not have enough resolutions to simulate the local
4020 temperature and rainfall over the ORB region. There is need of the dynamical and statistical
4021 downscaling models in which the seasonal hindcast and prediction or future projection by
4022 CMIP models are used as boundary conditions and downscaled over the ORB region, in light
4023 of the trends in rainfall and temperature as well as in dry spell frequencies and the Botswana
4024 High found in this thesis. Except for a few studies such as Wolski (2009) who used a satellite
4025 rainfall product to downscale ten global circulation models, not much work has been done
4026 using downscaling techniques to study temperature and rainfall variations over the ORB
4027 region.

4028

4029 **References**

4030

4031 Allan, R.J., Reason, C.J.C., Lindsay, J.A., Ansell, T.J., 2003. Protracted ENSO episodes and
4032 their impacts in the Indian Ocean region. *Deep Sea Res. Part II Top. Stud. Oceanogr.*, 50(12–
4033 13), 2331-2347.

4034

4035 Amaya, D.J., DeFlorio, M.J., Miller, A.J., Xie, S.P., 2017. WES feedback and the Atlantic
4036 meridional mode: Observations and CMIP5 comparisons. *Clim. Dyn.*, 49, 1665-1679.

4037

4038 Andersson, L., Gumbrecht, T., Hughes, D., Kniveton, D., Ringrose, S., Savenije, H., Todd,
4039 M, Wilk, J., Wolski, P., 2003. Water flow dynamics in the Okavango River Basin and Delta:
4040 a pre-requisite for the ecosystems of the Delta. *Phys. Chem. Earth.*, 28, 1165-1172.

4041

4042 Andersson, L., Wilk, J., Todd, M.C., Hughes, D.A., Earle, A., Kniveton, D., Layberry, R.,
4043 Savenije, H.H., 2006. Impact of climate change and development scenarios on flow patterns
4044 in the Okavango River. *J. Hydrol.*, 331(1-2), 43-57.

4045

4046 Ashok, K., Yamagata, T., 2009. The El Niño with a difference. *Nature*, 461(7263), 481-484.

4047

4048 Ashok, K., Behera, S.K., Rao, S.A., Weng, H., Yamagata, T., 2007. El Niño Modoki and its
4049 possible teleconnection. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 112, C11007. doi:10.1029/2006JC003798.

4050

4051 Barimalala, R., Desbiolles, F., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2018. Madagascar influence on
4052 the South Indian Ocean convergence zone, the Mozambique Channel Trough and southern
4053 African rainfall. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 45(20), 11-380.

4054

4055 Barimalala, R., Blamey, R.C., Desbiolles, F., Reason, C.J.C., 2020. Variability in the
4056 Mozambique Channel Trough and impacts on southeast African rainfall. *J. Clim.*, 33(2), 749-
4057 765.

4058

4059 Barros, V.R., Field, C.B., 2014. Climate change 2014—Impacts, adaptation and vulnerability:
4060 Regional aspects. Cambridge University Press.

4061

4062 Behera, S.K., Yamagata, T., 2001. Subtropical SST dipole events in the Southern Indian
4063 Ocean. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 28(2), 327-330.
4064
4065 Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2009. Numerical simulation of a mesoscale convective system
4066 over the east coast of South Africa. *Tellus A: Dyn. Meteorol. Oceanogr.*, 61(1), 17-34.
4067
4068 Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2012. Mesoscale convective complexes over southern Africa.
4069 *J. Clim.*, 25(2), 753-766.
4070
4071 Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2013. The role of mesoscale convective complexes in southern
4072 Africa summer rainfall. *J. Clim.*, 26(5), 1654-1668.
4073
4074 Blamey, R.C., Middleton, C., Lennard, C., Reason, C.J.C., 2017. A climatology of potential
4075 severe convective environments across South Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 49(5), 2161-2178.
4076
4077 Blamey, R.C., Kolusu, S.R., Mahlalela, P., Todd, M.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2018. The role of
4078 regional circulation features in regulating El Niño climate impacts over southern Africa: A
4079 comparison of the 2015/2016 drought with previous events. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 38(11), 4276-
4080 4295.
4081
4082 Boschhat, G., Terray, P., Masson, S., 2013. Extratropical forcing of ENSO. *Geophys. Res.*
4083 *Lett.*, 40(8), 1605-1611.
4084
4085 Bouvet, A., Mermoz, S., Le Toan, T., Villard, L., Mathieu, R., Naidoo, L., Asner, G.P., 2018.
4086 An above-ground biomass map of African savannahs and woodlands at 25 m resolution
4087 derived from ALOS PALSAR. *Remote Sens. Environ.*, 206, 156-173.
4088
4089 Byakatonda, J., Parida, B.P., Moalafhi, D.B., Kenabatho, P.K., Lesolle, D., 2020.
4090 Investigating relationship between drought severity in Botswana and ENSO. *Nat. Hazards*,
4091 *100(1)*, 255-278.
4092
4093 Camberlin, P., Martiny, N., Philippon, N. and Richard, Y., 2007. Determinants of the
4094 interannual relationships between remote sensed photosynthetic activity and rainfall in
4095 tropical Africa. *Remote Sens. Environ.*, 106(2), 199-216.

4096
4097 Chiang JC, Vimont DJ (2004) Analogous Pacific and Atlantic meridional modes of tropical
4098 atmosphere-ocean variability. *J. Clim.*, 17, 4143-4158.
4099
4100 Chu, H., Venevsky, S., Wu, C., Wang, M., 2019. NDVI-based vegetation dynamics and its
4101 response to climate changes at Amur-Heilongjiang River Basin from 1982 to 2015. *Sci. Total*
4102 *Environ.*, 650, 2051-2062.
4103
4104 Conway, D., Van Garderen, E.A., Deryng, D., Dorling, S., Krueger, T., Landman, W.,
4105 Lankford, B., Lebek, K., Osborn, T., Ringler, C., Thurlow, J., 2015. Climate and southern
4106 Africa's water–energy–food nexus. *Nat. Climate Change*, 5(9), 837-846.
4107
4108 Cook, K.H., 1998, October. On the response of the Southern Hemisphere to ENSO. In Proc
4109 23rd Climate Diagnostics and Prediction Workshop (323-326). Miami, FL: American
4110 Meteorological Society.
4111
4112 Cook, K., 2000. The South Indian convergence zone and interannual rainfall variability over
4113 southern Africa. *J. Clim.* 13(21), 3789-3804.
4114
4115 Cook, K., 2001. A Southern Hemisphere wave response to ENSO with implications for
4116 southern Africa precipitation. *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 58(15), 2146-2162.
4117
4118 Cook, C., Reason, C.J.C., Hewitson, B.C., 2004. Wet and dry spells within particularly wet
4119 and dry summers in the South African summer rainfall region. *Clim. Res.*, 26(1), 17-31.
4120
4121 Copernicus Climate Change Service, 2017. ERA5: Fifth generation of ECMWF atmospheric
4122 reanalyses of the global climate. Copernicus Climate Change Service Climate Data Store
4123 (CDS). Available: <https://cds.climate.copernicus.eu> [2022, November 20].
4124
4125 Crétat, J., Pohl, B., Dieppois, B., Berthou, S., Pergaud, J., 2018. The Angola Low:
4126 relationship with southern African rainfall and ENSO. *Clim. Dyn.*, 52(3-4), 1783-1803.
4127

4128 Crimp, S.J., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Mason, S.J., 1998. Sensitivity of a tropical-temperate trough
4129 to sea-surface temperature anomalies in the Agulhas retroflection region. *Water SA*, 24, 93-
4130 100.

4131

4132 Curran, P.J., 1983. Multispectral remote sensing for the estimation of green leaf area index.
4133 *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. Ser. Math. Phys. Sci.*, 309(1508), 257-270.

4134

4135 D'Abreton, P.C., Tyson, P.D., 1995. Divergent and non-divergent water vapour transport
4136 over southern Africa during wet and dry conditions. *Meteorol. Atmos. Phys.*, 55(1), 47-59.

4137

4138 Davenport, M.L., Nicholson, S.E., 1993. On the relationship between rainfall and the
4139 Normalized Difference Vegetation Index for diverse vegetation types of East Africa. *Int. J.*
4140 *Remote Sens.*, 14, 2369-2389.

4141

4142 Dieppois, B., Pohl, B., Rouault, M., New, M., Lawler, D., Keenlyside, N., 2016. Interannual
4143 to interdecadal variability of winter and summer southern African rainfall, and their
4144 teleconnections. *Geophys. Res. Atm.*, 121(11), 6215-6239.

4145

4146 Dieppois, B., Pohl, B., Crétat, J., Eden, J., Sidibe, M., New, M., Rouault, M., Lawler, D.,
4147 2019. Southern African summer-rainfall variability, and its teleconnections, on interannual to
4148 interdecadal timescales in CMIP5 models. *Clim. Dyn.*, 53, 3505-3527.

4149

4150 Driver, P., Reason, C.J.C., 2017. Variability in the Botswana High and its relationships with
4151 rainfall and temperature characteristics over southern Africa. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 37, 570-581.

4152

4153 Driver, P., Abiodun, B., Reason, C.J.C., 2019. Modelling the precipitation response over
4154 southern Africa to the 2009–2010 El Niño using a stretched grid global atmospheric model.
4155 *Clim. Dyn.*, 52(7-8), 3929-3949.

4156

4157 Dunning, C.M., Black, E.C., Allan, R.P., 2016. The onset and cessation of seasonal rainfall
4158 over Africa. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 121, 11405-11424.

4159

4160 Dyson, L., 2015. A heavy rainfall sounding climatology over Gauteng South Africa, using
4161 self-organising maps. *Clim. Dyn.*, 45, 3051-3065.

4162
4163 Dyson, L.L., van Heerden, J., 2001. The heavy rainfall and floods over the northeastern
4164 interior of South Africa during February 2000. *S. Afr. J. Sci.*, 97, 80-86.
4165
4166 Dyson, L.L., Van Heerden, J., Sumner, P.D., 2015. A baseline climatology of
4167 sounding-derived parameters associated with heavy rainfall over Gauteng, South Africa. *Int.*
4168 *J. Climatol.*, 35(1), 114-127.
4169
4170 Edossa, D.C., Woyessa, Y.E., Welderufael, W.A., 2014. Analysis of droughts in the central
4171 region of South Africa and their association with SST anomalies. *Int. J. Atmos. Sci.*
4172 <http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2014/508953>.
4173
4174 Ellery, W.N., McCarthy, T.S., Smith, N.D., 2003. Vegetation, hydrology, and sedimentation
4175 patterns on the major distributary system of the Okavango Fan, Botswana. *Wetlands*, 23(2),
4176 357-375.
4177
4178 Engelbrecht, C.J., Landman, W.A., Engelbrecht F.A., Malherbe, J., 2015. A synoptic
4179 decomposition of rainfall over the Cape south coast of South Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 44, 2589-
4180 2607.
4181
4182 Engelbrecht, F., Adegoke, J., Bopape, M.J., Naidoo, M., Garland, R., Thatcher, M.,
4183 McGregor, J., Katzfey, J., Werner, M., Ichoku, C., Gatebe, C., 2015. Projections of rapidly
4184 rising surface temperatures over Africa under low mitigation. *Environ. Res. Lett.*, 10(8),
4185 085004.
4186
4187 Erasmi, S., Propastin, P., Kappas, M., Panferov, O., 2009. Spatial patterns of NDVI variation
4188 over Indonesia and their relationship to ENSO warm events during the period 1982-2006. *J.*
4189 *Clim.*, 22(24), 6612-6623.
4190
4191 Eyring, V., Bony, S., Meehl, G.A., Senior, C.A., Stevens, B., Stouffer, R.J., Taylor, K.E.,
4192 2016. Overview of the Coupled Model Intercomparison Project Phase 6 (CMIP6)
4193 experimental design and organization. *Geosci. Model Dev.*, 9(5), 1937-1958.
4194

4195 Fan, Y., Van den Dool, H., 2008. A global monthly land surface air temperature analysis for
4196 1948–present. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*, *113(D1)*. doi:10.1029/2007JD008470.
4197

4198 Farrar, T.J., Nicholson, S.E., Lare, A.R., 1994. The influence of soil type on the relationships
4199 between NDVI, rainfall, and soil moisture in semiarid Botswana. II. NDVI response to soil
4200 moisture. *Remote Sens. Environ.*, *50(2)*, 121-133.
4201

4202 Fauchereau, N., Pohl, B., Reason, C.J.C., Rouault, M., Richard, Y., 2009. Recurrent daily
4203 OLR patterns in the Southern Africa/Southwest Indian Ocean region, implications for South
4204 African rainfall and teleconnections. *Clim. Dyn.*, *32*, 575-591.
4205

4206 Favre, A., Hewitson, B., Tadross, M., Lennard, C., Cerezo-Mota, R., 2012. Relationships
4207 between cut-off lows and the semiannual and southern oscillations. *Clim. Dyn.*, *38*, 1473-
4208 1487.
4209

4210 Favre, A., Hewitson, B., Lennard, C., Cerezo-Mota, R., Tadross, M., 2013. Cut-off Lows in
4211 the South Africa region and their contribution to precipitation. *Clim. Dyn.*, *41*, 2331-2351.
4212

4213 Feng, J., Chen, W., Tam, C.-Y., Zhou, W., 2010. Difference impacts of El Niño and El Niño
4214 Modoki on China rainfall in the decaying phases. *Int. J. Climatol.*, *31*, 2091-2101.
4215

4216 Fitchett, J.M., Grab, S.W., 2014. A 66-year tropical cyclone record for south-east Africa:
4217 temporal trends in a global context. *Int. J. Climatol.*, *34*, 3604-3615.
4218

4219 Florenchie, P., Reason, C.J.C., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Rouault, M., Roy, C., Masson, S., 2004.
4220 Evolution of interannual warm and cold events in the southeast Atlantic Ocean. *J. Clim.*, *17*,
4221 2318-2334.
4222

4223 Francis, R., Bino, G., Inman, V., Brandis, K., Kingsford, R.T., 2021. The Okavango Delta's
4224 waterbirds—Trends and threatening processes. *Glob. Ecol. Conserv.*, *30*, e01763.
4225

4226 Frost, P., 1996. The ecology of miombo woodlands. The miombo in transition: woodlands
4227 and welfare in Africa. Bogor: CFIOR.
4228

4229 Funk, C., Peterson, P., Landsfeld, M., Pedreros, D., Verdin, J., Shukla, S., Husak, G,
4230 Rowland, J., Harisson, L., Hoell, A., Michaelson, J., 2015. The climate hazards infrared
4231 precipitation with stations a new environmental record for monitoring extremes. *Sci. Data*,
4232 *2(1)*, 1-21.

4233

4234 Gillett, N.P., Kell, T.D., Jones, P.D., 2006. Regional climate impacts of the Southern Annular
4235 Mode. *Geophys Res Lett*, *33(23)*.

4236

4237 Giorgi, F., Jones, C., Asrar, G.R., 2009. Addressing climate information needs at the regional
4238 level: The CORDEX framework. *WMO Bull.*, *58*, 175-183.

4239

4240 Goddard, L., Graham, N.E., 1999. Importance of the Indian Ocean for simulating rainfall
4241 anomalies over eastern and southern Africa. *J. Geophys. Res.*, *104*, 19099-19116.

4242

4243 Gondwe, M.P., Jury, M.R., 1997. Sensitivity of vegetation (NDVI) to climate over southern
4244 Africa: Relationships with summer rainfall and OLR. *South Afr. Geogr. J.*, *79(1)*, 52-60.

4245

4246 Gong, D., Wang, S., 1999. Definition of Antarctic oscillation index. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*,
4247 *26(4)*, 459-462.

4248

4249 Good, S.P., Caylor, K.K., 2011. Climatological determinants of woody cover in Africa.
4250 *PNAS*, *108(12)*, 4902-4907.

4251

4252 Guilpart, N., Grassini, P., Van Wart, J., Yang, H., Van Ittersum, M.K., Van Bussel, L.G.,
4253 Wolf, J., Claessens, L., Leenaars, J.G., Cassman, K.G., 2017. Rooting for food security in
4254 Sub-Saharan Africa. *Environ. Res. Lett.*, *12(11)*, <https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-9326/aa9003>.

4255

4256 Gumbrecht, T., Wolski, P., Frost, P., McCarthy, T.S., 2004. Forecasting the spatial extent of
4257 the annual flood in the Okavango Delta, Botswana. *J. Hydrol.*, *290(3-4)*, 178-191.

4258

4259 Hall, A., Visbeck, M., 2001. Ocean and Sea Ice response to the Southern Hemisphere
4260 Annular Mode: Results from a coupled climate model. *Clivar Exchanges*, *22*, 4-6.

4261

4262 Hamed, K.H., Rao, A.R., 1998. A modified Mann–Kendall trend test for autocorrelated data.
4263 *J. Hydrol.*, 204(1-4), 182-196.
4264

4265 Hammond, J.L., 2011. The resource curse and oil revenues in Angola and Venezuela. *Sci.*
4266 *Soc.*, 75, 348–378.
4267

4268 Hansingo, K., Reason, C.J.C., 2009. Modelling the atmospheric response over southern
4269 Africa to SST forcing in the southeast tropical Atlantic and southwest subtropical Indian
4270 Oceans. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 29(7), 1001-1012.
4271

4272 Harrison, M.S.J., 1984. A generalized classification of South African summer rain-bearing
4273 synoptic systems. *J. Climatol.*, 4(5), 547-560.
4274

4275 Harrison, M.S.J., 1986. A synoptic climatology of South African rainfall variations. Ph.D.
4276 Thesis. University of the Witwatersrand.
4277

4278 Hart, R.E., Grumm, R.H., 2001. Using normalized climatological anomalies to rank synoptic-
4279 scale events objectively. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 129, 2426-2442.
4280

4281 Hart, N.C.G., Reason, C.J.C., Fauchereau, N., 2010. Tropical–extra tropical interactions over
4282 southern Africa: three cases of heavy summer season rainfall. *Mon. Weather Rev.*, 138, 2608-
4283 2623.
4284

4285 Hart, N.C.G., Reason, C.J.C., Fauchereau, N., 2012. Building a Tropical-Extratropical Cloud
4286 Band Metbot. *Mon. Wea. Rev.*, 140, 4005-4016.
4287

4288 Hart, N.C., Reason, C.J.C., Fauchereau, N., 2013. Cloud bands over southern Africa:
4289 Seasonality, contribution to rainfall variability and modulation by the MJO. *Clim. Dyn.*,
4290 41(5), 1199-1212.
4291

4292 Hart, N.C., Washington, R., Reason, C.J.C., 2018. On the likelihood of tropical-extratropical
4293 cloud bands in the south Indian convergence zone during ENSO events. *J. Clim.*, 31(7),
4294 2797-2817.
4295

4296 Heerden, J.V., Taljaard, J.J., 1998. Africa and surrounding waters. In *Meteorology of the*
4297 *southern hemisphere (141-174)*. Boston: Amer. Meteor. Soc.

4298

4299 Hermes, J.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2005. Ocean model diagnosis of interannual coevolving SST
4300 variability in the South Indian and South Atlantic Oceans. *J. Clim.*, *18(15)*, 2864-2882.

4301

4302 Hersbach, H., Bell, B., Berrisford, P., Hirahara, S., Horányi, A., Muñoz-Sabater, J., Nicolas,
4303 J., Peubey, C., Radu, R., Schepers, D., Simmons, A., 2020. The ERA5 global reanalysis. *Q. J.*
4304 *R. Meteorol. Soc.*, *146(730)*, 1999-2049.

4305

4306 Hirst, A. C., Hastenrath, S., 1983. Atmosphere ocean mechanisms of climate anomalies in the
4307 Angola-tropical Atlantic sector. *J. Rhys. Oceanogr.*, *13*, 1146-1157.

4308

4309 Hobday, A.J., Alexander, L.V., Perkins, S.E., Smale, D.A., Straub, S.C., Oliver, E.C.,
4310 Benthuisen, J.A., Burrows, M.T., Donat, M.G., Feng, M., Holbrook, N.J., 2016. A
4311 hierarchical approach to defining marine heatwaves. *Prog. Oceanogr.*, *141*, 227-238.

4312

4313 Hoell, A., Funk, C., Magadzire, T., Zinke, J., Husak, G., 2015. El Niño-Southern Oscillation
4314 diversity and southern Africa teleconnections during austral summer. *Clim. Dyn.*, *45*, 1583-
4315 1599.

4316

4317 Hoell, A., Funk, C., Zinke, J., Harrison, L., 2017. Modulation of the Southern Africa
4318 precipitation response to the El Niño Southern Oscillation by the subtropical Indian Ocean
4319 Dipole. *Clim. Dyn.*, *48*, 2529-2540.

4320

4321 Hourdin, F.I., Musat, I., Bony, S., Braconnot, P., Codron, F., Dufresne, J-L., et al., 2006. The
4322 LMDZ4 general circulation model: Climate performance and sensitivity to parameterized
4323 physics with emphasis on tropical convection. *Clim. Dyn.*, *27(7-8)*, 787-813.

4324

4325 Howard, E., Washington, R., 2018. Characterizing the synoptic expression of the Angola
4326 Low. *J. Clim.*, *31(9)*, 7147-7166.

4327

4328 Howard, E., Washington, R., 2019. Drylines in Southern Africa: Rediscovering the Congo
4329 Air Boundary. *J. Clim.*, *32(23)*, 8223-8242.

4330
4331 Howard, E., Washington, R., 2020. Tracing future spring and summer drying in southern
4332 Africa to tropical lows and the Congo Air Boundary. *J. Clim.*, 33(14), 6205-6228.
4333
4334 Howard, E., Washington, R., Hodges, K.I., 2019. Tropical lows in southern Africa: Tracks,
4335 rainfall contributions, and the role of ENSO. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*, 124(21), 11009-11032.
4336
4337 Huang, B., Liu, C., Banzon, V., Freeman, E., Graham, G., Hankins, B., Smith, T., Zhang,
4338 H.M., 2021. Improvements of the daily optimum interpolation sea surface temperature
4339 (DOISST) version 2.1. *J. Clim.*, 34(8), 2923-2939.
4340
4341 Huang, B., Thorne, P.W., Banzon, V.F., Boyer, T., Chepurin, G., Lawrimore, J.H., Menne,
4342 M.J., Smith, T.M., Vose, R.S., Zhang, H.M., 2017. Extended reconstructed sea surface
4343 temperature, version 5 (ERSSTv5): upgrades, validations, and intercomparisons. *J. Clim.*,
4344 30(20), 8179-8205.
4345
4346 Huffman, G.J., Bolvin, D.T., Nelkin, E.J., Wolff, D.B., Adler, R.F., Gu, G., Hong, Y.,
4347 Bowman, K.P., Stocker, E.F., 2007. The TRMM Multisatellite Precipitation Analysis
4348 (TMPA): Quasi-global, multiyear, combined-sensor precipitation estimates at fine scales. *J.*
4349 *Hydrometeorol.*, 8(1), 38-55.
4350
4351 Hughes, D.A., Kingston, D.G., Todd, M.C., 2011. Uncertainty in water resources availability
4352 in the Okavango River basin as a result of climate change. *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 15(3),
4353 931-941.
4354
4355 Hunt, K.M.R., Fletcher, J.K., 2019. The relationship between Indian monsoon rainfall and
4356 low-pressure systems. *Clim. Dyn.*, 53, 1859-1871.
4357
4358 IPCC, 2013. Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis. T.F. Stocker et al., Eds.,
4359 Cambridge University Press.
4360
4361 IPCC, 2021. Climate Change 2021: The Physical Science Basis. V. Masson-Delmotte et al.,
4362 Eds., Cambridge University Press.
4363

4364 James, R., Hart, N.C., Munday, C., Reason, C.J., Washington, R., 2020. Coupled climate
4365 model simulation of tropical–extratropical cloud bands over southern Africa. *J. Clim.*, *33*(19),
4366 8579-8602.

4367

4368 Jones, P.D., Lister, D.H., Osborn, T.J., Harpham, C., Salmon, M., Morice, C.P., 2012.
4369 Hemispheric and large-scale land-surface air temperature variations: An extensive revision
4370 and an update to 2010. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*, *117*(D5).

4371

4372 Jury, M.R., 2010. Climate and weather factors modulating river flows in southern Angola.
4373 *Int. J. Climatol.*, *30*(6), 901-908.

4374

4375 Jury, M.R., 2013. Climate trends in southern Africa. *S. Afr. J. Sci.*, *109*(1), 1-11.

4376

4377 Jury, M.R., Valentine, H.R., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., 1993. Influence of the Agulhas Current on
4378 summer rainfall on the southeast coast of South Africa. *J. Appl. Meteorol.*, *32*, 1282-1287.

4379

4380 Kalnay, E., Kanamitsu, M., Kistler, R., Collins, W., Deaven, D., Gandin, L., Iredell, M.,
4381 Saha, S., White, G., Woollen, J., Zhu, Y., 1996. The NCEP/NCAR 40–year reanalysis
4382 project. *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*, 437-472.

4383

4384 Kanamitsu, M., Ebisuzaki, W., Woollen, J., Yang, S.K., Hnilo, J.J., Fiorino, M., Potter, G.L.,
4385 2002. Ncep–doe amip-ii reanalysis (r-2). *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*, *83*(11), 1631-1644.

4386

4387 Kao, H.Y., Yu, J.Y., 2009. Contrasting eastern-Pacific and central-Pacific types of ENSO. *J.*
4388 *Clim.*, *22*, 615-632.

4389

4390 Karypidou, M.C., Katragkou, E., Sobolowski, S.P., 2021. Precipitation over southern Africa:
4391 Is there consensus among GCMs, RCMs and observational data?. *Geosci. Model Dev.*
4392 *Discuss.*, 1-25.

4393

4394 Kendall, M.G., 1975. Rank correlation methods. London: Charles Griffin.

4395

4396 Kgathi, D.L., Kniveton, D., Ringrose, S., Turton, A.R., Vanderpost, C.H., Lundqvist, J.,
4397 Seely, M., 2006. The Okavango; a river supporting its people, environment and economic

4398 development. *J. Hydrol.*, 331(1-2), 3-17.

4399

4400 Kijazi, A.L., Reason, C.J.C., 2009. Analysis of the 2006 floods over northern Tanzania. *Int.*
4401 *J. Climatol.*, 29(7), 955-970.

4402

4403 Knapp, K.R., Kruk, M.C., Levinson, D.H., Diamond, H.J., Neumann, C.J., 2010. The
4404 international best track archive for climate stewardship (IBTrACS) unifying tropical cyclone
4405 data. *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*, 91(3), 363-376.

4406

4407 Knapp, K.R., Ansari, S., Bain, C.L., Bourassa, M.A., Dickinson, M.J., Funk, C., Helms, C.N.,
4408 Hennon, C.C., Holmes, C.D., Huffman, G.J., Kossin, J.P., 2011. Globally gridded satellite
4409 observations for climate studies. *Bull. Amer. Meteor. Soc.*, 92(7), 893-907.

4410

4411 Koungue, R.A.I., Rouault, M., Illig, S., Brandt, P., Jouanno, J., 2019. Benguela Niños and
4412 Benguela Niñas in forced ocean simulation from 1958 to 2015. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 124(8),
4413 5923-5951.

4414

4415 Kug, J.S., Jin, F.F., An, S.I., 2009. Two types of El Niño events: Cold tongue El Niño and
4416 warm pool El Niño. *J. Clim.*, 22, 1499-1515.

4417

4418 Kuhnel, I., 1989. Tropical-extratropical cloudband climatology based on satellite data. *Int. J.*
4419 *Climatol.*, 9, 441-463.

4420

4421 Laing, A.G., Carbone, R., Levizzani, V., Tuttle, J., 2008. The propagation and diurnal cycles
4422 of deep convection in northern tropical Africa. *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc.*, 134(630), 93-109.

4423

4424 Lazenby, M.J., Todd, M.C., Wang, Y., 2016. Climate model simulation of the South Indian
4425 Ocean Convergence Zone: Mean state and variability. *Clim. Res.*, 68(1), 59-71.

4426

4427 Lazenby, M.J., Todd, M.C., Chadwick, R., Wang, Y., 2018. Future precipitation projections
4428 over central and southern Africa and the adjacent Indian Ocean: What causes the changes and
4429 the uncertainty?. *J. Clim.*, 31(12), 4807-4826.

4430

4431 Leroux, M., 2001. The meteorology and climate of tropical Africa. Springer Science &

4432 Business Media.
4433
4434 Lima, D.C., Soares, P.M., Semedo, A., Cardoso, R.M., 2018. A global view of coastal low-
4435 level wind jets using an ensemble of reanalyses. *J. Clim.*, 31(4), 1525-1546.
4436
4437 Lindsay, J.A., 1988. South African rainfall, the Southern Oscillation and a Southern
4438 Hemisphere semi-annual cycle. *J. climatol.*, 8(1), 17-30.
4439
4440 Luo, N., Mao, D., Wen, B., Liu, X., 2020. Climate Change Affected Vegetation Dynamics in
4441 the Northern Xinjiang of China: Evaluation by SPEI and NDVI. *Land*, 9(3), 90.
4442
4443 Lyon, B., 2009. Southern Africa summer drought and heat waves: observations and coupled
4444 model behaviour. *J. Clim.* 22(22), 6033-6046.
4445
4446 Lyon, B., Mason, S.J., 2007. The 1997–98 summer rainfall season in southern Africa. Part I:
4447 Observations. *J. Clim.*, 20(20), 5134-5148.
4448
4449 MacKellar, N., New, M., Jack, C., 2014. Observed and modelled trends in rainfall and
4450 temperature for South Africa: 1960-2010. *S. Afr. J. Sci.*, 110(7-8), 1-13.
4451
4452 Macron, C., Pohl, B., Richard, Y., Bessafi., M., 2014. How do tropical temperate troughs
4453 form and develop over southern Africa? *J. Clim.*, 27(4), 1633-1647.
4454
4455 Maddox, R.A., 1980. Mesoscale convective complexes. *Bull. Amer. Meteor. Soc.*, 61, 1374-
4456 1387.
4457
4458 Magole, L., Thapelo, K., 2005. The impact of extreme flooding of the Okavango River on the
4459 livelihood of the molapo farming community of Tubu village, Ngamiland Sub-district,
4460 Botswana. *Botsw. Notes Rec.*, 7(1), 125-137.
4461
4462 Mahlalela, P.T., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2019. Mechanisms behind early winter
4463 rainfall variability in the southwestern Cape, South Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 53(1), 21-39.
4464

4465 Mahlalela, P.T., Blamey, R.C., Hart, N.C.G., Reason, C.J.C., 2020. Drought in the Eastern
4466 Cape region of South Africa and trends in rainfall characteristics. *Clim. Dyn.*, 55(9), 2743-
4467 2759.

4468

4469 Malan, N., Reason, C.J.C., Loveday, B.R., 2013. Variability in tropical cyclone heat potential
4470 over the Southwest Indian Ocean. *J. Geophys. Res. Oceans*, 118(12), 6734-6746.

4471

4472 Malherbe, J., Landman, W.A., Engelbrecht, F.A., 2014. The bi-decadal rainfall cycle,
4473 Southern Annular Mode and tropical cyclones over the Limpopo River Basin, southern
4474 Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 42(11-12), 3121–3138.

4475

4476 Malherbe, J., Engelbrecht, F.A., Landman, W.A., Engelbrecht, C.J., 2012. Tropical systems
4477 from the southwest Indian Ocean making landfall over the Limpopo River Basin, southern
4478 Africa: a historical perspective. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 32, 1018-1032.

4479

4480 Malo, A.R., Nicholson, S.E., 1990. A study of rainfall and vegetation dynamics in the
4481 African Sahel using normalized difference vegetation index. *J. Arid Environ.*, 19(1), 1-24.

4482

4483 Manhique, A.J., Reason, C.J.C., Rydberg, L., Fauchereau, N., 2011. ENSO and Indian Ocean
4484 sea surface temperatures and their relationships with tropical temperate troughs over
4485 Mozambique and the Southwest Indian Ocean. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 31, 1-13.

4486

4487 Manhique, A.J., Reason, C.J.C., Silinto, B., Zucula, J., Raiva, I., Congolo, F., Mavume, A.F.,
4488 2015. Extreme rainfall and floods in southern Africa in January 2013 and associated
4489 circulation patterns. *Nat. Hazards*, 77(2), 679-691.

4490

4491 Mann, H.B., 1945. Nonparametric tests against trend. *Econometric*, 13(3), 245-259.

4492

4493 Marshall, G.J., 2003. Trends in the Southern Annular Mode from observations and
4494 reanalyses. *J. clim.*, 16(24), 4134-4143.

4495

4496 Martiny, N., Philippon, N., Richard, Y., Camberlin, P., Reason, C.J.C., 2010. Predictability
4497 of NDVI in semi-arid African regions. *Theor. Appl. Climatol.*, 100(3), 467-484.

4498

4499 Mason, S.J., 1995. Sea-surface temperature-South African rainfall associations, 1910-1989.
4500 *Int. J. Climatol.*, 15, 119-135.
4501

4502 Mason, S.J., Jury, M.R., 1997. Climatic variability and change over southern Africa: a
4503 reflection on underlying processes. *Prog. Phys. Geogr.*, 21(1), 23-50.
4504

4505 Maúre, G., Pinto, I., Ndebele–Murisa, M., Muthige, M., Lennard, C., Nikulin, G., Dosio, A.,
4506 Meque, A., 2018. The southern African climate under 1.5°C and 2°C of global warming as
4507 simulated by CORDEX regional climate models. *Environ. Res. Lett.*, 13(6), 065002.
4508

4509 Mavume, A.F., Rydberg, L., Rouault, M., Lutjeharms, J.R., 2009. Climatology and landfall
4510 of tropical cyclones in the southwest Indian Ocean. *West. Indian Ocean J. Mar. Sci.*, 8(1), 15-
4511 36.
4512

4513 Mawren, D., Hermes, J., Reason, C.J.C., 2020. Exceptional tropical cyclone Kenneth in the
4514 far northern Mozambique Channel and ocean eddy influences. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 47(16),
4515 e2020GL088715.
4516

4517 Mbaiwa, J.E., 2004. The socio–economic benefits and challenges of a community–based
4518 safari hunting tourism in the Okavango Delta, Botswana. *J. Tour. Stud.*, 15(2), 37.
4519

4520 Mbaiwa, J.E., 2015. Ecotourism in Botswana: 30 years later. *J. Ecotourism*, 14(2-3), 204-
4521 222.
4522

4523 Mbaiwa, J.E., 2017. Poverty or riches: Who benefits from the booming tourism industry in
4524 Botswana?. *J. Contemp. Afr. Stud.*, 35(1), 93-112.
4525

4526 McCarthy, T.S., Metcalfe, J., 1990. Chemical sedimentation in the semi-arid environment of
4527 the Okavango Delta, Botswana. *Chem. Geol.*, 89 (1-2), 157-178.
4528

4529 McCarthy, J.M., Gumbrecht, T., McCarthy, T., Frost, P., Wessels, K. and Seidel, F., 2003.
4530 Flooding patterns of the Okavango wetland Botswana between 1972 and 2000. *Ambio*, 32(7),
4531 453-457.
4532

4533 McGregor, J.L., Dix, M.R., 2008. An updated description of the conformal-cubic atmospheric
4534 model. In High resolution numerical modelling of the atmosphere and ocean (51-75). New
4535 York: Springer.

4536

4537 Mendelson, J., el Obeid, S., 2004. Okavango River: The flow of lifeline. Cape Town: Struik
4538 Publishers and Research and Information Services of Namibia (RAISON).

4539

4540 Meque, A., Pinto, I., Maúre, G., Beleza, A., 2022. Understanding the variability of heatwave
4541 characteristics in southern Africa. *Weather Clim. Extremes*.
4542 <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.wace.2022.100498>.

4543

4544 Moalafhi, B.D., Evans, J.P., Sharma, A., 2016. Evaluating global reanalysis datasets for
4545 provision of boundary conditions in regional climate modelling. *Clim. Dyn.*, 47, 2727-2745.

4546

4547 MODIS, 1999. MODIS Vegetation Index (MOD 13): Algorithm Theoretical Basis Document
4548 version 3. Available: http://modis.gsfc.nasa.gov/data/atbd/atbd_mod13.pdf [2022, November
4549 9].

4550

4551 Morake, D.M., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2021. Long-lived mesoscale convective
4552 systems over eastern South Africa. *J. Clim.*, 34(15), 6421-6439.

4553

4554 Morioka, Y., Engelbrecht, F., Behera, S.K., 2015. Potential sources of decadal climate
4555 variability over southern Africa. *J. Clim.*, 28(22), 8695-8709.

4556

4557 Morioka, Y., Tozuka, T., Masson, S., Terray, P., Luo, J.J., Yamagata, T., 2012. Subtropical
4558 dipole modes simulated in a coupled general circulation model. *J. Clim.*, 25(12), 4029-4047.

4559

4560 Moses, O., Hambira, W.L., 2018. Effects of climate change on evapotranspiration over the
4561 Okavango Delta water resources. *Phys. Chem. Earth, Parts A/B/C*, 105, 98-103.

4562

4563 Moses, O., Ramotonto, S., 2018. Assessing forecasting models on prediction of the tropical
4564 cyclone Dineo and the associated rainfall over Botswana. *Weather Clim. Extremes*, 21, 102-
4565 109.

4566

4567 Moses, O., Gondwe, M., 2019. Simulation of changes in the twenty-first century maximum
4568 temperatures using the statistical downscaling model at some stations in Botswana. *MESE*,
4569 5(3), 843-855.

4570

4571 Moses, O., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Relationships between NDVI, river
4572 discharge and climate in the Okavango River Basin region. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 42(2), 691-713.

4573

4574 Mpungose, N., Thoithi, W., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2022. Extreme rainfall events in
4575 southeastern Africa during the summer. *Theor. Appl. Climatol.*, 150(1), 185-201.

4576

4577 Mueller, B., Seneviratne, S.I., 2012. Hot days induced by precipitation deficits at the global
4578 scale. *PNAS* 109(31), 12398-12403.

4579

4580 Mulenga, H.M., Rouault, M., Reason, C.J.C., 2003. Dry summers over northeastern South
4581 Africa and associated circulation anomalies. *Clim Res*, 25(1), 29-41.

4582

4583 Muller, A., Reason, C.J.C., Fauchereau, N., 2008. Extreme rainfall in the Namib Desert
4584 during late summer 2006 and influences of regional ocean variability. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 28(8),
4585 1061-1070.

4586

4587 Munday, C., Washington, R., 2017. Circulation controls on southern African precipitation in
4588 coupled models: The role of the Angola Low. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 122(2), 861-877.

4589

4590 Munday, C., Washington, R., 2019. Controls on the diversity in climate model projections of
4591 early summer drying over southern Africa. *J. Clim.*, 32, 3707-3725.

4592

4593 Murray-Hudson, M., Wolski, P., Ringrose, S., 2006. Scenarios of the impact of local and
4594 upstream changes in climate and water use on hydro-ecology in the Okavango Delta,
4595 Botswana. *J. Hydrol.*, 331(1-2), 73-84.

4596

4597 Nakamura, M., 2012. Impacts of SST anomalies in the Agulhas Current system on the
4598 regional climate variability. *J. Clim.*, 25(4), 1213-1229.

4599

4600 Ndarana, T., Mpati, S., Bopape, M.J., Engelbrecht, F., Chikoore, H., 2021. The flow and
4601 moisture fluxes associated with ridging South Atlantic Ocean anticyclones during the
4602 subtropical southern African summer. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 41, E1000-E1017.

4603

4604 Ndarana, T., Rammopo, T.S., Chikoore, H., Barnes, M.A., Bopape, M.J., 2020. A quasi-
4605 geostrophic diagnosis of the zonal flow associated with cut-off lows over South Africa and
4606 surrounding oceans. *Clim. Dyn.*, 55(9), 2631-2644.

4607

4608 New, M., Hulme, M., Jones, P., 2000. Representing twentieth century space-time climate
4609 variability. Part II: development of 1901–96 monthly grids of terrestrial surface climate. *J.*
4610 *Clim.*, 13, 2217-2238.

4611

4612 New, M., Hewitson, B., Stephenson, D.B., Tsiga, A., Kruger, A., Manhique, A., Gomez, B.,
4613 Coelho, C.A., Masisi, D.N., Kululanga, E., Mbambalala, E., 2006. Evidence of trends in daily
4614 climate extremes over southern and west Africa. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*, 111(D14).
4615 doi:10.1029/2005JD006289.

4616

4617 Nguyen, P., Shearer, E.J., Tran, H., Ombadi, M., Hayatbini, N., Palacios, T., Huynh, P.,
4618 Braithwaite, D., Updegraff, G., Hsu, K., Kuligowski, B., 2019. The CHRS Data Portal, an
4619 easily accessible public repository for PERSIANN global satellite precipitation data. *Sci.*
4620 *data*, 6(1), 1-10.

4621

4622 Nicholson, S.E., 2009. A revised picture of the structure of the “monsoon” and land ITCZ
4623 over West Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 32(7-8), 1155-1171.

4624

4625 Nicholson, S.E., 2018. The ITCZ and the seasonal cycle over equatorial Africa. *Bull. Am.*
4626 *Meteorol. Soc.*, 99(2), 337-348.

4627

4628 Nicholson, S.E., Entekhabi, D., 1987. Rainfall variability in equatorial and southern Africa:
4629 Relationships with sea surface temperatures along the southwestern coast of Africa. *J. Appl.*
4630 *Meteorol.*, 26(5), 561-578.

4631

4632 Nicholson, S.E., Farrar, T.J., 1994. The influence of soil type on the relationships between
4633 NDVI, rainfall, and soil moisture in semiarid Botswana. I. NDVI response to rainfall. *Remote*
4634 *Sens. Environ.*, 50(2), 107-120.

4635

4636 Nicholson, S.E., Kim, J., 1997. The relationship of the El Niño-Southern Oscillation to
4637 African rainfall. *Int. J. Climatol.* 17, 117-135.

4638

4639 Pinheiro, H.R., Hodges, K.I., Gan, M.A., Ferreira, N.J., 2017. A new perspective of the
4640 climatological features of upper level cutoff lows in the Southern Hemisphere. *Clim. Dyn.*,
4641 48, 541-559.

4642

4643 Pinzon, J.E., Tucker, C.J., 2014. A non-stationary 1981–2012 AVHRR NDVI3g time series.
4644 *Remote Sens.*, 6(8), 6929-6960.

4645

4646 Preethi, B., Sabin, T.B., Adedoyin, J.A., Ashok, K., 2015. Impacts of the ENSO Modoki and
4647 other tropical Indo-Pacific climate-drivers on African rainfall. *Sci. Rep.*, 5, 16653.
4648 <https://doi.org/10.1038/srep16653>.

4649

4650 Ramos, A.M., Trigo, R.M., Liberato, M.L., 2014. A ranking of high-resolution daily
4651 precipitation extreme events for the Iberian Peninsula. *Atmos. Sci. Lett.*, 15, 328-334.

4652

4653 Ramos, A.M., Trigo, R.M., Liberato, M.L., 2017. Ranking of multi-day extreme precipitation
4654 events over the Iberian Peninsula. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 37, 607-620.

4655

4656 Ramos, A.M., Martins, M.J., Tomé, R., Trigo, R.M., 2018. Extreme precipitation events in
4657 summer in the Iberian Peninsula and its relationship with atmospheric rivers. *Front. Earth*
4658 *Sci.*, 6, 110. 10.3389/feart.2018.00110.

4659

4660 Rapolaki, R.S., Reason, C.J.C., 2018. Tropical storm Chedza and associated floods over
4661 south-eastern Africa. *Nat. Hazards*, 93, 189-217.

4662

4663 Rapolaki, R.S., Blamey, R.C., Hermes, J.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2019. A classification of
4664 synoptic weather patterns linked to extreme rainfall over the Limpopo River Basin in
4665 southern Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, 53(3-4), 2265-2279.

4666
4667 Rapolaki, R.S., Blamey, R.C., Hermes, J.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2020. Moisture sources
4668 associated with heavy rainfall over the Limpopo River Basin, southern Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*,
4669 *55(5)*, 1473-1487.
4670
4671 Rapolaki, R.S., Blamey, R.C., Hermes, J.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2021. Moisture sources and
4672 transport during an extreme rainfall event over the Limpopo River Basin, southern Africa.
4673 *Atmos. Res.*, 264. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atmosres.2021.105849>.
4674
4675 Ratna, S.B., Behera, S., Ratnam, J.V., Takahashi, K., Yamagata, T., 2013. An index for
4676 tropical temperate troughs over southern Africa. *Clim. Dyn.*, *41(2)*, 421-441.
4677
4678 Ratnam, J.V., Behera, S.K., Masumoto, Y., Yamagata, T., 2014. Remote effects of El Niño
4679 and Modoki events on the austral summer precipitation of southern Africa. *J. Clim.*, *27(10)*,
4680 3802-3815.
4681
4682 Ratnam, J.V., Behera, S.K., Masumoto, Y., Takahashi, K., Yamagata, T., 2011. Anomalous
4683 climatic conditions associated with the El Niño Modoki during boreal winter of 2009. *Clim.*
4684 *Dyn.*, *39*, 227-238.
4685
4686 Rácz, Z., Smith, R.K., 1999. The dynamics of heat lows. *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc.*, *125*,
4687 225-252.
4688
4689 Reason, C.J.C., 1998. Warm and cold events in the southeast Atlantic/SWIO region and
4690 potential impacts on circulation and rainfall over southern Africa. *Meteorol. Atmos. Phys.*, *69*,
4691 49-66.
4692
4693 Reason, C.J.C., 2001a. Subtropical Indian Ocean SST dipole events and southern African
4694 rainfall. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, *28(11)*, 2225-2227.
4695
4696 Reason, C.J.C., 2001b. Evidence for the influence of the Agulhas Current on regional
4697 atmospheric circulation patterns. *J. Clim.*, *14(12)*, 2769-2778.
4698

4699 Reason, C.J.C., 2002. Sensitivity of the southern African circulation to dipole sea surface
4700 temperature patterns in the South Indian Ocean. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 22, 377-393.
4701

4702 Reason, C.J.C., 2007. Tropical cyclone Dera, the unusual 2000/01 tropical cyclone season in
4703 the South West Indian Ocean and associated rainfall anomalies over Southern Africa.
4704 *Meteorol. Atmos. Phys.*, 97, 181-188.
4705

4706 Reason, C.J.C., 2016. The Bolivian, Botswana, and Bilybara Highs and Southern Hemisphere
4707 drought/floods. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43(3), 1280-1286.
4708

4709 Reason, C.J.C., 2019. Low-frequency variability in the Botswana High and southern African
4710 regional climate. *Theor. Appl. Climatol.* 137(1), 1321-1334.
4711

4712 Reason, C.J.C., Mulenga, H., 1999. Relationships between South African rainfall and SST
4713 anomalies in the southwest Indian Ocean. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 19(15), 1651-1673.
4714

4715 Reason, C.J.R., Rouault, M., 2002. ENSO-like decadal patterns and South African rainfall.
4716 *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 29, 1638. doi:10.1029/2002GL014663.
4717

4718 Reason, C.J.C., Keibel, A., 2004. Tropical cyclone Eline and its unusual penetration and
4719 impacts over the southern African mainland. *Weather Forecast*, 19(5), 789-805.
4720

4721 Reason, C.J.C., Jagadheesha, D., 2005. A model investigation of recent ENSO impacts over
4722 southern Africa. *Meteorol. Atmos. Phys.*, 89(1-4), 181-205.
4723

4724 Reason, C.J.C., Rouault, M., 2005. Links between the Antarctic Oscillation and winter
4725 rainfall over western South Africa. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 32(7).
4726

4727 Reason, C.J.C., Smart, S., 2015. Tropical southeast Atlantic warm events and associated
4728 rainfall anomalies over southern Africa. *Front. Environ. Sci.*, 3, 24.
4729

4730 Reason, C.J.C., Hachigonta, S., Phaladi, R.F., 2005. Interannual variability in rainy season
4731 characteristics over the Limpopo region of southern Africa. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 25, 1835-1853.
4732

4733 Reason, C.J.C., Landman, W., Tennant, W., 2006. Seasonal to decadal prediction of southern
4734 African climate and its links with variability of the Atlantic Ocean. *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*,
4735 87(7), 941-955.
4736

4737 Reason, C., Allan, R., Lindesay, J., Ansell, T., 2000. ENSO and climatic signals across the
4738 Indian Ocean Basin in the global context: Part I, interannual composite patterns. *Int. J.*
4739 *Climatol.*, 20(11), 1285-1327.
4740

4741 Rehbein, A., Ambrizzi, T., Mechoso, C.R., 2018. Mesoscale convective systems over the
4742 Amazon basin. Part I: climatological aspects. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 38(1), 215-229.
4743

4744 Revermann, R., Finckh, M., Stellmes, M., Strohbach, B.J., Frantz, D., Oldeland, J., 2016.
4745 Linking land surface phenology and vegetation–plot databases to model terrestrial plant α –
4746 diversity of the Okavango Basin. *Remote Sens.*, 8(5), 370.
4747

4748 Richard, Y., Pocard, I.J.I.J.O.R.S., 1998. A statistical study of NDVI sensitivity to seasonal
4749 and interannual rainfall variations in Southern Africa. *Int. J. Remote Sens.*, 19(15), 2907–
4750 2920.
4751

4752 Richard, Y., Martiny, N., Rouault, M., Philippon, N., Tracol, Y., Castel, T., 2012. Multi-
4753 month memory effects on early summer vegetative activity in semi-arid South Africa and
4754 their spatial heterogeneity. *Int. J. Remote Sens.*, 33(21), 6763-6782.
4755

4756 Richard, Y., Martiny, N., Fauchereau, N., Reason, C., Rouault, M., Vigaud, N., Tracol, Y.,
4757 2008. Interannual memory effects for spring NDVI in semi-arid South Africa. *Geophys. Res.*
4758 *Lett.*, 35(13).
4759

4760 Ringrose, S., Matheson, W., Boyle, T., 1988. Differentiation of ecological zones in the
4761 Okavango Delta, Botswana by classification and contextural analyses of Landsat MSS data.
4762 *Photogramm. Eng. Remote Sens.*, 54(5), 601-608.
4763

4764 Rocha, A., Simmonds, I., 1997. Interannual variability of south-eastern African summer
4765 rainfall. Part I: Relationships with air-sea interaction processes. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 17(3), 235–
4766 265.

4767
4768 Rockström, J., Falkenmark, M., 2000. Semiarid crop production from a hydrological
4769 perspective: gap between potential and actual yields. *Crit. Rev. Plant. Sci.*, 19(4), 319-346.
4770
4771 Rouault, M., Richard, Y., 2003. Intensity and spatial extension of drought in South Africa at
4772 different time scales. *Water SA*, 29(4), 489-500.
4773
4774 Rouault, M., Florenchie, P., Fauchereau, N., Reason, C., 2003a. Southeast tropical Atlantic
4775 warm events and southern African rainfall. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 30(5).
4776
4777 Rouault, M., Reason, C.J.C., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Beljaars, A., 2003b. Underestimation of
4778 latent and sensible heat fluxes above the Agulhas Current in NCEP and ECMWF analyses. *J.*
4779 *Clim.*, 16, 776-782.
4780
4781 Rouault, M., Illig, S., Lübbecke, J., Koungue, R.A.I., 2018. Origin, development and demise
4782 of the 2010–2011 Benguela Niño. *J. Mar. Syst.*, 188, 39-48.
4783
4784 Rouault, M., White, S.A., Reason, C.J.C., Lutjeharms, J.R.E., Jobard, I., 2002. Ocean–
4785 atmosphere interaction in the Agulhas current region and a South African extreme weather
4786 event. *Weather Forecast*, 17(4), 655-669.
4787
4788 Shannon, L.V., Boyd, A.J., Brundrit, G.B., Taunton-Clark, J., 1986. On the existence of an El
4789 Niño-type phenomenon in the Benguela system. *J. Mar. Res.*, 44(3), 495-520.
4790
4791 Sillmann, J., Kharin, V.V., Zhang, X., Zwiers, F.W., Bronaugh, D., 2013. Climate extremes
4792 indices in the CMIP5 multimodel ensemble: Part 1. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.*, 118(4), 1716-
4793 1733.
4794
4795 Singleton, A.T., Reason, C.J.C., 2006. Numerical simulations of a severe rainfall event over
4796 the Eastern Cape coast of South Africa: sensitivity to sea surface temperature and
4797 topography. *Tellus A: Dyn. Meteorol.*, 58(3), 335-367.
4798
4799 Singleton, A.T., Reason, C.J.C., 2007. Variability in the characteristics of cut-off low
4800 pressure systems over subtropical southern Africa. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 27, 295-310.

4801
4802 SMEC, 1986. Southern Okavango Integrated Water Development Study. Gaborone:
4803 Department of Water Affairs.
4804
4805 Smith, P., 1976. An outline of the vegetation of the Okavango drainage system. Gaborone:
4806 Symposium on the Okavango Delta and its future utilization.
4807
4808 Smith, T.M., Reynolds, R.W., Peterson, T.C., Lawrimore, J., 2008. Improvements to
4809 NOAA's historical merged land-ocean surface temperature analysis (1880-2006). *J. Clim.*,
4810 *21*, 2283-2296.
4811
4812 Ta, S., Kouadio, K.Y., Ali, K.E., Toualy, E., Aman, A., Yoroba, F., 2016. West Africa
4813 extreme rainfall events and large-scale ocean surface and atmospheric conditions in the
4814 tropical Atlantic. *Adv. Meteorol.*, 1-14.
4815
4816 Tadeschi, R.G., Iracema, F., Cavalcantia, A., Grimm, A.M., 2013. Influences of two types of
4817 ENSO on South American precipitation. *Int. J. Climatol.*, *33*, 1382-1400.
4818
4819 Taljaard, J.J., 1972. Synoptic meteorology of the Southern Hemisphere. Meteorology of the
4820 Southern Hemisphere, C.W. Newton, Ed., Amer. Meteor. Soc., 139-213.
4821
4822 Taljaard, J.J., 1986. Change of rainfall distribution and circulation patterns over southern
4823 Africa in summer. *J. Climatol.*, *6*, 579-592.
4824
4825 Taschetto, A.S., Haarsma, R.J., Sen Gupta, A., Ummenhofer, C.C., Hill, K.J., England, M.
4826 H., 2010. Australian monsoon variability driven by a Gill–Matsuno type response to central
4827 western Pacific warming. *J. Clim.*, *23*, 4717-4736.
4828
4829 Taylor, K.E., Stouffer, R.J., Meehl, G.A., 2012. An overview of CMIP5 and the experiment
4830 design. *Bull. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*, *93*(4), 485-498.
4831
4832 Thoithi, W., Blamey, R.C., Reason, C.J.C., 2021. Dry spells, wet days and their trends across
4833 southern Africa during the summer rainy season. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, *48*(5),
4834 e2020GL091041.

4835
4836 Thompson, B. W., 1965. The Climate of Africa. Oxford University Press.
4837
4838 Thompson, D.W.J., Wallace, J.M., 2000. Annular modes in the extratropical circulation. Part
4839 I: Month-to-month variability. *J. Clim.*, 13, 1000-1016.
4840
4841 Todd, M.C., Washington, R., 1999. Circulation anomalies with tropical-temperate troughs in
4842 southern Africa and the south west Indian Ocean. *Clim. Dyn.*, 15, 937-951.
4843
4844 Torrance, J.D., 1979. Upper windflow patterns in relation to rainfall in south-east central
4845 Africa. *Weather*, 34, 106-115.
4846
4847 Tucker, C.J., Dregne, H.E., Newcomb, W.W., 1991. Expansion and contraction of the Sahara
4848 Desert from 1980 to 1990. *Science*, 253, 299-301.
4849
4850 Tucker, C.J., Pinzon, J.E., Brown, M.E., Slayback, D.A., Pak, E.W., Mahoney, R., Vermote,
4851 E.F., El Saleous, N., 2005. An extended AVHRR 8-km NDVI dataset compatible with
4852 MODIS and SPOT vegetation NDVI data. *Int. J. Remote Sens.*, 26(20), 4485-4498.
4853
4854 Tyson, P.D., 1986. Climatic change and variability in southern Africa. USA: Oxford
4855 University Press.
4856
4857 Tyson, P.D., Preston-Whyte, R.A., 2000. The Weather and Climate of Southern Africa.
4858 Oxford University Press.
4859
4860 Tyson, P. D., Preston-Whyte, R.A., 2015. The Weather and Climate of Southern Africa.
4861 Oxford University Press.
4862
4863 Tyson, P.D., Dyer, T.G., Mametse, M.N., 1975. Secular changes in South African rainfall:
4864 1880 to 1972. *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 101(430), 817-833.
4865
4866 UNESCO, 2014. Okavango Delta. Available: <http://whc.unesco.org/en/list/1432> [2022,
4867 August 15].
4868

4869 UNICEF, 2022. Children's lives and rights at risk due to KwaZulu-Natal floods. Available:
4870 [https://www.unicef.org/southafrica/press-releases/childrens-lives-and-rights-risk-due-
4872 kwazulu-natal-floods](https://www.unicef.org/southafrica/press-releases/childrens-lives-and-rights-risk-due-
4871 kwazulu-natal-floods) [2022, August 10].

4873 Usman, M.T., Reason, C.J.C., 2004. Dry spell frequencies and their variability over southern
4874 Africa. *Clim. Res.* 26(3), 199-211.

4875

4876 VanderPost, C., Ringrose, S., Seely, M., 2005. Preliminary land–use and land–cover mapping
4877 in the upper Okavango basin and implications for the Okavango delta. *Botsw. Notes Rec.*,
4878 37(1), 236-252.

4879

4880 Venegas, S.A., Mysak, L.A., Straub, D.N., 1997. Atmosphere–ocean coupled variability in
4881 the South Atlantic. *J. Clim.*, 10(11), 2904-2920.

4882

4883 Vicente-Serrano, S.M., Beguería, S., López-Moreno, J.I., 2010. A multiscalar drought index
4884 sensitive to global warming: the standardized precipitation evapotranspiration index. *J. Clim.*,
4885 23(7), 1696-1718.

4886

4887 Vicente-Serrano, S.M., Van der Schrier, G., Beguería, S., Azorin-Molina, C., Lopez-Moreno,
4888 J.I., 2015. Contribution of precipitation and reference evapotranspiration to drought indices
4889 under different climates. *J. Hydrol.*, 526, 42-54.

4890

4891 Vigaud, N., Richard, Y., Rouault, M., Fauchereau, N., 2009. Moisture transport between the
4892 South Atlantic Ocean and southern Africa: relationships with summer rainfall and associated
4893 dynamics. *Clim. Dyn.*, 32(1), 113-123.

4894

4895 Wainwright, C.M., Black, E., Allan, R.P., 2021. Future changes in wet and dry season
4896 characteristics in CMIP5 and CMIP6 simulations. *J. Hydrometeorol.*, 22(9), 2339-2357.

4897

4898 Walker, N.D., 1990. Links between South African summer rainfall and temperature
4899 variability of the Agulhas and Benguela Current systems. *J. Geophys. Res. Oceans*, 95(C3),
4900 3297-3319.

4901

4902 Walker, N.D., Mey, R.D., 1988. Ocean/atmosphere heat fluxes within the Agulhas
4903 Retroflection region. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 93, 15473-15483.

4904

4905 Washington, R., Todd, M., 1999. Tropical-temperate links in Southern Africa and Southwest
4906 Indian Ocean satellite-derived daily rainfall. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 19, 1601-1616.

4907

4908 Washington, R., Preston, A., 2006. Extreme wet years over southern Africa: Role of Indian
4909 Ocean sea surface temperatures. *J. Geophys. Res.*, 111(D15).

4910

4911 Weinzierl, T. Schilling, J., 2013. On demand, development and dependence: a review of
4912 current and future implications of socioeconomic changes for integrated water resource
4913 management in the Okavango Catchment of Southern Africa. *Land*, 2(1), 60–80.

4914

4915 Weldon, D., Reason, C.J.C., 2014. Variability of rainfall characteristics over the South Coast
4916 region of South Africa. *Theor. Appl. Climatol.*, 115(1), 177-185.

4917

4918 Weng, H., Behera, S.K., Yamagata, T., 2009. Anomalous winter climate conditions in the
4919 Pacific rim during recent El Niño Modoki and El Niño events. *Clim. Dyn.*, 32, 663-674.

4920

4921 White, F., 1984. The Vegetation of Africa: A Descriptive Memoir to Accompany the
4922 Unesco/Aetfat/Unso Vegetation Map of Africa and Map. Paris: United Nations Educational.

4923

4924 Wilk, J., Kniveton, D., Andersson, L., Layberry, R., Todd, M., Hughes, D., Ringrose, S.,
4925 Vanderpost, C., 2006. Estimating rainfall and water balance over the Okavango River basin
4926 for hydrological applications. *J. Hydrol.*, 331(1-2), 18-29.

4927

4928 Wingate, V.R., Phinn, S.R., Kuhn, N., 2019a. Mapping precipitation corrected NDVI trends
4929 across Namibia. *Sci. Total Environ.*, 684, 96-112.

4930

4931 Wingate, V.R., Kuhn, N.J., Phinn, S.R., van der Waal, C., 2019b. Mapping trends in woody
4932 cover throughout Namibian savanna with MODIS seasonal phenological metrics and field
4933 inventory data. *Biogeosciences Discuss.*, 1-37.

4934

4935 Wolski, P., 2009. Assessment of hydrological effects of climate change in the Okavango
4936 Basin. OKACOM/EPSSMO, Maun, Botswana.
4937

4938 Wolski, P., Murray-Hudson, M., 2006a. Flooding dynamics in a large low-gradient alluvial
4939 fan, the Okavango Delta, Botswana, from analysis and interpretation of a 30-year
4940 hydrometric record. *Hydrol. Earth Syst. Sci.*, *10*(1), 127-137.
4941

4942 Wolski, P., Murray-Hudson, M., 2006b. Recent changes in Xudum distributary of the
4943 Okavango Delta and Lake Ngami, Botswana. *S. Afr.*, *102*, 173-175.
4944

4945 Wolski, P., Murray-Hudson, M., 2008. "Alternative futures" of the Okavango Delta
4946 simulated by a suite of global climate and hydro-ecological models. *Water SA*, *34*(5), 605-
4947 610.
4948

4949 Wolski, P., Savenije, H.H.G., Murray-Hudson, M., Gumbrecht, T., 2006. Modelling of the
4950 hydrology of the Okavango Delta. *J. Hydrol.*, *331*(1), 58-72.
4951

4952 Wolski, P., Todd, M.C., Murray-Hudson, M.A., Tadross, M., 2012. Multi-decadal
4953 oscillations in the hydroclimate of the Okavango River system during the past and under a
4954 changing climate. *J. Hydrol.*, *475*, 294-305.
4955

4956 Wolski, P., Stone, D., Tadross, M., Wehner, M., Hewitson, B., 2014. Attribution of floods in
4957 the Okavango basin, Southern Africa. *J. Hydrol.*, *511*, 350-358.
4958

4959 Xie, P., Arkin, P.A., 1997. Global precipitation: A 17-year monthly analysis based on gauge
4960 observations, satellite estimates, and numerical model outputs. *Bull. Amer. Meteor.*, *78*(11),
4961 2539-2558.
4962

4963 Yang, Y., Wang, S., Bai, X., Tan, Q., Li, Q., Wu, L., Tian, S., Hu, Z., Li, C., Deng, Y., 2019.
4964 Factors affecting long-term trends in global NDVI. *Forests*, *10*(5), 372.
4965

4966 Ye, L., Shi, K., Xin, Z., Wang, C., Zhang, C., 2019. Compound droughts and heat waves in
4967 China. *Sustainability*, *11*(12), 3270.
4968

4969 Yeh, S.W., Kug, J.S., Dewitte, B., Kwon, M.H., Kirtman, B.P. and Jin, F.F., 2009. El Niño in
4970 a changing climate. *Nature*, 461(7263), 511-514.
4971
4972 Yu, M., Li, Q., Hayes, M.J., Svoboda, M.D., Heim, R.R., 2014. Are droughts becoming more
4973 frequent or severe in China based on the standardized precipitation evapotranspiration index:
4974 1951-2010?. *Int. J. Climatol.*, 34(3), 545-558.
4975
4976 Yue, S., Wang, C.Y., 2002. Applicability of prewhitening to eliminate the influence of serial
4977 correlation on the Mann-Kendall test. *Water Resour. Res.*, 38(6), 4-1.
4978
4979 Yue, S., Pilon, P., Phinney, B., Cavadias, G., 2002. The influence of autocorrelation on the
4980 ability to detect trend in hydrological series. *Hydrol. Process*, 16(9), 1807-1829.
4981
4982 Zhang, Q., Körnich, H., Holmgren, K., 2013. How well do reanalyses represent the southern
4983 African precipitation? *Clim. Dyn.*, 40(3-4), 951-962.
4984
4985 Zhang, X., Alexander, L., Hegerl, G.C., Jones, P., Tank, A.K., Peterson, T.C., Trewin, B.,
4986 Zwiers, F.W., 2011. Indices for monitoring changes in extremes based on daily temperature
4987 and precipitation data. *Wiley Interdiscip. Rev. Clim. Change*, 2(6), 851-870.
4988